

# The Zork I Z-machine Interpreter

Robert Baruch

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Zork I</b>	<b>7</b>
1.1	Introduction . . . . .	7
1.2	About this document . . . . .	7
<b>2</b>	<b>Programming techniques</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	Zero page temporaries . . . . .	9
2.2	Tail calls . . . . .	9
2.3	Unconditional branches . . . . .	9
2.4	Stretchy branches . . . . .	10
2.5	Shared code . . . . .	10
2.6	Macros . . . . .	10
2.6.1	STOW, STOW2 . . . . .	10
2.6.2	MOVB, MOVW, STOB . . . . .	11
2.6.3	PSHW, PULB, PULW . . . . .	12
2.6.4	INCW . . . . .	13
2.6.5	ADDA, ADDAC, ADDB, ADDB2, ADDW, ADDWC . . . . .	14
2.6.6	SUBB, SUBB2, SUBW . . . . .	16
2.6.7	ROLW, RORW . . . . .	17

<b>3</b>	<b>The boot process</b>	<b>19</b>
3.1	BOOT1 . . . . .	19
3.2	BOOT2 . . . . .	25
<b>4</b>	<b>The main program</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>The Z-stack</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>Z-code</b>	<b>37</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>I/O</b>	<b>47</b>
7.1	Strings and output . . . . .	47
7.1.1	The Apple II text screen . . . . .	47
7.1.2	The text buffer . . . . .	50
7.1.3	Z-coded strings . . . . .	60
7.1.4	Input . . . . .	71
7.1.5	Lexical parsing . . . . .	73
<b>8</b>	<b>Arithmetic routines</b>	<b>95</b>
8.0.1	Negation and sign manipulation . . . . .	95
8.0.2	16-bit multiplication . . . . .	97
8.0.3	16-bit division . . . . .	98
8.0.4	16-bit comparison . . . . .	101
8.0.5	Other routines . . . . .	102
8.0.6	Printing numbers . . . . .	103
<b>9</b>	<b>Disk routines</b>	<b>105</b>

<b>10 The instruction dispatcher</b>	<b>109</b>
10.1 Executing an instruction . . . . .	109
10.2 Retrieving the instruction . . . . .	112
10.3 Decoding the instruction . . . . .	113
10.3.1 0op instructions . . . . .	113
10.3.2 1op instructions . . . . .	114
10.3.3 2op instructions . . . . .	116
10.3.4 varop instructions . . . . .	118
10.4 Getting the instruction operands . . . . .	120
<b>11 Calls and returns</b>	<b>125</b>
11.1 Call . . . . .	125
11.2 Return . . . . .	129
<b>12 Objects</b>	<b>132</b>
12.1 Object table format . . . . .	132
12.2 Getting an object's address . . . . .	132
12.3 Removing an object . . . . .	134
12.4 Object strings . . . . .	137
12.5 Object attributes . . . . .	138
12.6 Object properties . . . . .	140
<b>13 Saving and restoring the game</b>	<b>143</b>
13.0.1 Save prompts for the user . . . . .	143
13.0.2 Saving the game state . . . . .	149
13.0.3 Restoring the game state . . . . .	152

<b>14 Instructions</b>	<b>156</b>
14.1 Instruction utilities . . . . .	158
14.1.1 Handling branches . . . . .	161
14.2 Data movement instructions . . . . .	165
14.2.1 load . . . . .	165
14.2.2 loadw . . . . .	165
14.2.3 loadb . . . . .	166
14.2.4 store . . . . .	166
14.2.5 storew . . . . .	167
14.2.6 storeb . . . . .	168
14.3 Stack instructions . . . . .	168
14.3.1 pop . . . . .	168
14.3.2 pull . . . . .	169
14.3.3 push . . . . .	169
14.4 Decrements and increments . . . . .	169
14.4.1 inc . . . . .	169
14.4.2 dec . . . . .	170
14.5 Arithmetic instructions . . . . .	170
14.5.1 add . . . . .	170
14.5.2 div . . . . .	171
14.5.3 mod . . . . .	172
14.5.4 mul . . . . .	173
14.5.5 random . . . . .	174
14.5.6 sub . . . . .	174
14.6 Logical instructions . . . . .	175
14.6.1 and . . . . .	175

14.6.2	not	175
14.6.3	or	176
14.7	Conditional branch instructions	176
14.7.1	dec_chk	176
14.7.2	inc_chk	177
14.7.3	je	177
14.7.4	jg	179
14.7.5	jin	179
14.7.6	jl	180
14.7.7	jz	180
14.7.8	test	181
14.7.9	test_attr	181
14.8	Jump and subroutine instructions	182
14.8.1	call	182
14.8.2	jump	182
14.8.3	print_ret	182
14.8.4	ret	183
14.8.5	ret_popped	183
14.8.6	rfalse	183
14.8.7	rtrue	184
14.9	Print instructions	184
14.9.1	new_line	184
14.9.2	print	185
14.9.3	print_addr	185
14.9.4	print_char	185
14.9.5	print_num	186

14.9.6	print_obj . . . . .	186
14.9.7	print_paddr . . . . .	186
14.10	Object instructions . . . . .	187
14.10.1	clear_attr . . . . .	187
14.10.2	get_child . . . . .	188
14.10.3	get_next_prop . . . . .	189
14.10.4	get_parent . . . . .	190
14.10.5	get_prop . . . . .	191
14.10.6	get_prop_addr . . . . .	194
14.10.7	get_prop_len . . . . .	195
14.10.8	get_sibling . . . . .	196
14.10.9	insert_obj . . . . .	197
14.10.10	put_prop . . . . .	198
14.10.11	remove_obj . . . . .	199
14.10.12	set_attr . . . . .	199
14.11	Other instructions . . . . .	200
14.11.1	nop . . . . .	200
14.11.2	restart . . . . .	200
14.11.3	restore . . . . .	201
14.11.4	quit . . . . .	201
14.11.5	save . . . . .	201
14.11.6	sread . . . . .	201
<b>15</b>	<b>The entire program</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>16</b>	<b>Defined Chunks</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>17</b>	<b>Index</b>	<b>216</b>

# Chapter 1

## Zork I

### 1.1 Introduction

**Zork I: The Great Underground Empire** was an Infocom text adventure originally written as part of Zork in 1977 by Tim Anderson, Marc Blank, Bruce Daniels, and Dave Lebling. The game runs under a virtual machine called the Z-Machine. Thus, only the Z-Machine interpreter needed to be ported for the game to be playable on various machines.

The purpose of this document is to reverse engineer the Z-Machine interpreter found in various versions of Zork I for the Apple II. The disk images used are from the Internet Archive:

- [Zork I, revision 15 \(ZorkI\\_r15\\_4amCrack\)](#)

The original Infocom assembly language files are [available](#). The directory for the Apple II contains the original source code for various Z-Machine interpreters. Version 3 is called ZIP, version 4 is EZIP, version 5 is XZIP, and version 6 is YZIP. There is also a directory OLDZIP which seems to correspond to this version, version 2, although there are a few differences.

### 1.2 About this document

This is a literate programming document. This means the explanatory text is interspersed with source code. The source code can be extracted from the document and compiled.



The goal is to provide all the source code necessary to reproduce a binary identical to the one found on the Internet Archive's `ZorkI_r15_4amCrack` disk image.

The assembly code is assembled using `dasm`.

This document doesn't explain every last detail. It's assumed that the reader can find enough details on the 6502 processor and the Apple II series of computers to fill in the gaps.

## Chapter 2

# Programming techniques

### 2.1 Zero page temporaries

Zero-page consists essentially of global variables. Sometimes we need local temporaries, and Apple II programs mostly doesn't use the stack for those. Rather, some "global" variables are reserved for temporaries. You might see multiple symbols equated to a single zero-page location. The names of such symbols are used to make sense within their context.

### 2.2 Tail calls

Rather than a `JSR` immediately followed by an `RTS`, instead a `JMP` can be used to save stack space, code space, and time. This is known as a tail call, because it is a call that happens at the tail of a function.

### 2.3 Unconditional branches

The 6502 doesn't have an unconditional short jump. However, if you can find a condition that is always true, this can serve as an unconditional short jump, which saves space and time.

## 2.4 Stretchy branches

6502 branches have a limit to how far they can jump. If they really need to jump farther than that, you have to put a **JMP** or an unconditional branch within reach.

## 2.5 Shared code

To save space, sometimes code at the end of one function is also useful to the next function, as long as it is within reach. This can save space, at the expense of functions being completely independent.

## 2.6 Macros

The original Infocom source code uses macros for moving data around, and we will adopt these macros (with different names) and more to make our assembly language listings a little less verbose.

### 2.6.1 STOW, STOW2

STOW stores a 16-bit literal value to a memory location.

For example, **STOW #01FF, 0200** stores the 16-bit value **#01FF** to memory location **0200** (of course in little-endian order).

This is the same as **MOVEI** in the original Infocom source code.

```

10  <Macros 10>≡ (202a) 11a>
    MACRO STOW
        LDA    #{1}
        STA    {2}
        LDA    #{1}
        STA    {2}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:

**STOW**, used in chunks 27–29, 54, 97, 100, 103, 107, 108, 113b, 115b, 117c, 119, 125, 130b, 139a, 143, 145, 147–51, 153b, 154a, and 201.

STOW2 does the same, but in the opposite order. Parts of the code were written by different programmers at different times, so it's possible that the MOVEI macro was used inconsistently.

```
11a  <Macros 10>+≡ (202a) <10 11b>
      MACRO STOW2
          LDA    #>{1}
          STA    {2}+1
          LDA    #<{1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

STOW2, used in chunk 108.

## 2.6.2 MOVW, MOVW, STOB

MOVW moves a byte from one memory location to another, while STOB stores a literal byte to a memory location. The implementation is identical, and the only difference is documentation.

For example, MOVW \$01, \$0200 moves the byte at memory location \$01 to memory location \$0200, while STOB #\$01, \$0200 stores the byte #\$01 to memory location \$0200.

These macros are the same as MOVE in the original Infocom source code.

```
11b  <Macros 10>+≡ (202a) <11a 12a>
      MACRO MOVW
          LDA    {1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
      MACRO STOB
          LDA    {1}
          STA    {2}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

MOVW, used in chunks 34, 84a, 126a, 128–30, and 181a.

STOB, used in chunks 27, 28b, 62, 103, 112, 114d, 117a, 126a, 128a, and 131.

MOVW moves a 16-bit value from one memory location to the another.

For example, MOVW \$01FF, \$A000 moves the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF to memory location \$A000.

This is the same as MOVEW in the original Infocom source code.

12a     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 11b \ 12b \rangle$

```

        MACRO MOVW
            LDA    {1}
            STA    {2}
            LDA    {1}+1
            STA    {2}+1
        ENDM

```

Defines:

MOVW, used in chunks 29b, 97, 100, 112, 114d, 116, 126a, 128–31, 137, 151b, 154b, 166b, 169b, 171–74, 176b, 177a, 179a, 180a, 182a, 183a, 185, 186, and 193.

### 2.6.3 PSHW, PULB, PULW

PSHW is a macro that pushes a 16-bit value in memory onto the 6502 stack.

For example, PSHW \$01FF pushes the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF onto the 6502 stack.

This is the same as PUSHW in the original Infocom source code.

12b     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 12a \ 12c \rangle$

```

        MACRO PSHW
            LDA    {1}
            PHA
            LDA    {1}+1
            PHA
        ENDM

```

Defines:

PSHW, used in chunks 97, 100, 160a, and 197.

PULB is a macro that pulls an 8-bit value from the 6502 stack to memory.

For example, PULB \$01FF pulls an 8-bit value from the 6502 stack and stores it at memory location \$01FF.

12c     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 12b \ 13a \rangle$

```

        MACRO PULB
            PLA
            STA    {1}
        ENDM

```

Defines:

PULB, used in chunk 128b.

PULW is a macro that pulls a 16-bit value from the 6502 stack to memory.

For example, PULW \$01FF pulls a 16-bit value from the 6502 stack and stores it at memory location \$01FF.

This is the same as PULLW in the original Infocom source code.

13a  $\langle$ Macros 10 $\rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle$ 12c 13b $\rangle$

```

MACRO PULW
    PLA
    STA    {1}+1
    PLA
    STA    {1}
ENDM

```

Defines:

PULW, used in chunks 97, 100, 160a, and 197.

## 2.6.4 INCW

INCW is a macro that increments a 16-bit value in memory.

For example, INCW \$01FF increments the 16-bit value at memory location \$01FF.

This is the same as INCW in the original Infocom source code.

13b  $\langle$ Macros 10 $\rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle$ 13a 14a $\rangle$

```

MACRO INCW
    INC    {1}
    BNE    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

INCW, used in chunks 36, 107, 108, 137, 138, 160a, 174a, and 194.

## 2.6.5 ADDA, ADDAC, ADDB, ADDB2, ADDW, ADDWC

ADDA is a macro that adds the A register to a 16-bit memory location.

For example, `ADDA $01FF` adds the contents of the A register to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`.

14a  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 13b \ 14b \rangle$

```

MACRO ADDA
    CLC
    ADC    {1}
    STA    {1}
    BCC    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDA, used in chunks 91 and 130b.

ADDAC is a macro that adds the A register, and whatever the carry flag is set to, to a 16-bit memory location.

14b  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 14a \ 15a \rangle$

```

MACRO ADDAC
    ADC    {1}
    STA    {1}
    BCC    .continue
    INC    {1}+1
    .continue
ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDAC, used in chunk 194.

ADDB is a macro that adds an 8-bit immediate value, or the 8-bit contents of memory, to a 16-bit memory location.

For example, `ADDB $01FF, #$01` adds the immediate value `#$01` to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`, while `ADDB $01FF, $0300` adds the 8-bit value at memory location `$0300` to the 16-bit value at memory location `$01FF`.

This is the same as `ADDB` in the original Infocom source code. The immediate value is the second argument.

15a     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 14b \ 15b \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDB
            LDA    {1}
            CLC
            ADC     {2}
            STA     {1}
            BCC     .continue
            INC     {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDB, used in chunks 145 and 147b.

ADDB2 is the same as `ADDB` except that it swaps the initial `CLC` and `LDA` instructions.

15b     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 15a \ 15c \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDB2
            CLC
            LDA    {1}
            ADC     {2}
            STA     {1}
            BCC     .continue
            INC     {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDB2, used in chunks 92 and 93.

ADDW is a macro that adds two 16-bit values in memory and stores it to a third 16-bit memory location.

15c     $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 15b \ 16a \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDW
            CLC
            ADDWC  {1}, {2}, {3}
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDW, used in chunks 73, 90, 140, 165–68, and 170b.

Uses `ADDWC` 16a.



ADDWC is a macro that adds two 16-bit values in memory, plus the carry bit, and stores it to a third 16-bit memory location.

16a      $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$      (202a)  $\langle 15c \ 16b \rangle$

```

        MACRO  ADDWC
            LDA    {1}
            ADC    {2}
            STA    {3}
            LDA    {1}+1
            ADC    {2}+1
            STA    {3}+1
        ENDM

```

Defines:

ADDWC, used in chunks 15c and 97.

## 2.6.6 SUBB, SUBB2, SUBW

SUBB is a macro that subtracts an 8-bit value from a 16-bit memory location. This is the same as SUBB in the original Infocom source code. The immediate value is the second argument.

16b      $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$      (202a)  $\langle 16a \ 17a \rangle$

```

        MACRO  SUBB
            LDA    {1}
            SEC
            SBC    {2}
            STA    {1}
            BCS    .continue
            DEC    {1}+1
        .continue
        ENDM

```

Defines:

SUBB, used in chunks 35, 93, 130c, 160b, 163b, and 182a.

SUBB2 is the same as SUBB except that it swaps the initial SEC and LDA instructions.

17a  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 16b \ 17b \rangle$

```

    MACRO SUBB2
        SEC
        LDA    {1}
        SBC    {2}
        STA    {1}
        BCS    .continue
        DEC    {1}+1
    .continue
    ENDM

```

Defines:  
SUBB2, used in chunk 92b.

SUBW is a macro that subtracts the 16-bit memory value in the second argument from a 16-bit memory location in the first argument, and stores it in the 16-bit memory location in the third argument.

17b  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 17a \ 17c \rangle$

```

    MACRO SUBW
        SEC
        LDA    {1}
        SBC    {2}
        STA    {3}
        LDA    {1}+1
        SBC    {2}+1
        STA    {3}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:  
SUBW, used in chunks 94b, 95a, 174c, and 194.

## 2.6.7 ROLW, RORW

ROLW rotates a 16-bit memory location left.

17c  $\langle \text{Macros } 10 \rangle + \equiv$  (202a)  $\langle 17b \ 18 \rangle$

```

    MACRO ROLW
        ROL    {1}
        ROL    {1}+1
    ENDM

```

Defines:  
ROLW, used in chunk 100.

RORW rotates a 16-bit memory location right.

```
18  <Macros 10>+≡ (202a) <17c
      MACRO RORW
          ROR    {1}+1
          ROR    {1}
      ENDM
```

Defines:

RORW, used in chunk 97.

## Chapter 3

# The boot process

**Suggested reading:** *Beneath Apple DOS* (Don Worth, Pieter Lechner, 1982) page 5-6, [“What happens during booting”](#).

We will only examine the boot process in order to get to the main program. The boot process may just be the way the 4am disk image works, so should not be taken as original to Zork.

We will be doing a deep dive into `BOOT1`, since it is fairly easy to understand.

Apple II programs originally came on disk, and such disks are generally bootable. You’d put the disk in Drive 1, reset the computer, and the disk card ROM then loads the `BOOT1` section of the disk. This section starts from track 0 sector 0, and is almost always 1 sector (256 bytes) long. The data is stored to location `$0800` and then the disk card ROM causes the CPU to jump to location `$0801`. The very first byte in track 0 sector 0 is the number of sectors in this `BOOT1` section, and again, this is almost always 1.

After the disk card reads `BOOT1`, the zero-page location `IWMDATAPTR` is left as the pointer to the buffer to next read data into, so `$0900`. The location `IWMSLTNDX` is the disk card’s slot index (slot times 16).

### 3.1 `BOOT1`

`BOOT1` reads a number of sectors from track 0, backwards from a starting sector, down to sector 0. The sector to read is stored in `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, and is initially 9 for Zork I release 15. The RAM address to read the sectors to is

stored in `BOOT1.WRITE_ADDR`, and it is `$2200`. Thus, `BOOT1` will read sectors 0 through 9 into address `$2200 - $2BFF`.

```
20a  <BOOT1 20a>≡ 22d>
      BYTE    #$01 ; Number of sectors in BOOT1. Almost always 1.
      BOOT1:
      SUBROUTINE
```

```
      <Read BOOT2 from disk 20c>
      <Jump to BOOT2 25>
      <BOOT1 parameters 20b>
```

Defines:

`BOOT1`, used in chunk 24.

```
20b  <BOOT1 parameters 20b>≡ (20a)
      ORG      $08FD

      BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR:
      HEX      00 22
      BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM:
      HEX      09
```

Defines:

`BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, used in chunks 21, 22, and 24.

`BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR`, used in chunks 21–24.

Reading `BOOT2` involves repeatedly calling the disk card ROM's sector read routine with appropriate parameters. But first, we have to initialize some variables.

```
20c  <Read BOOT2 from disk 20c>≡ (20a) 23>
      <Skip initialization if BOOT1 already initialized 21a>
      .init_vars:
      <Initialize BOOT1 21b>

      .already_initted:
      <Set up parameters for reading a sector 22a>
      JMP      (RDSECT_PTR)
```

Uses `RDSECT_PTR` 203.

The reason we have to check whether `BOOT1` has already been initialized is that the disk card ROM's `RDSECT` routine jumps back to `BOOT1` after reading a sector.

Checking for initialization is as simple as checking the `IWMDATAPTR` page against `09`. If it's `09` then we have just finished reading `BOOT1`, and this is the first call to `BOOT1`, so we need to initialize. Otherwise, we can skip initialization.

**21a**  $\langle \textit{Skip initialization if BOOT1 already initialized 21a} \rangle \equiv$  (20c)

```

    LDA    IWMDATAPTR+1
    CMP    #$09
    BNE    .already_initted

```

Uses `IWMDATAPTR 203`.

To initialize the `BOOT1` variables, we first determine the disk card ROM's `RDSECT` routine address. This is simply `$CX5C`, where `X` is the disk card's slot number.

**21b**  $\langle \textit{Initialize BOOT1 21b} \rangle \equiv$  (20c) **21c**

```

    LDA    IWMSLTNDX
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    ORA    #$C0
    STA    RDSECT_PTR+1
    LDA    #$5C
    STA    RDSECT_PTR

```

Uses `IWMSLTNDX 203` and `RDSECT_PTR 203`.

Next, we initialize the address to read disk data into. Since we're reading backwards, we start by adding `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM` to the page number in `BOOT1.WRITE_ADDR`.

**21c**  $\langle \textit{Initialize BOOT1 21b} \rangle + \equiv$  (20c) **<21b**

```

    CLC
    LDA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
    ADC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
    STA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1

```

Uses `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 20b` and `BOOT1.WRITE_ADDR 20b`.

Now that `BOOT1` has been initialized, we can set up the parameters for the next read. This means loading up `IWMSECTOR` with the sector in track 0 to read, `IWMDATAPTR` with the address to read data into, and loading the `X` register with the slot index (slot times 16).

First we check whether we've read all sectors by checking whether `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM` is less than zero - recall that we are reading sectors from last down to 0.

**22a**    *<Set up parameters for reading a sector 22a>≡* (20c) **22c**>  
           LDX     **BOOT1\_SECTOR\_NUM**  
           BMI     .go\_to\_boot2       ; Are we done?  
 Uses `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 20b`.

We set up `IWMSECTOR` by taking the sector number and translating it to a physical sector on the disk using a translation table. This has to do with the way sectors on disk are interleaved for efficiency.

**22b**    *<BOOT1 sector translation table 22b>≡* (22d)  
           ORG     \$084D

**BOOT1\_SECTOR\_TRANSLATE\_TABLE:**

HEX     00 0D 0B 09 07 05 03 01  
 HEX     0E 0C 0A 08 06 04 02 0F

Defines:

`BOOT1_SECTOR_TRANSLATE_TABLE`, used in chunks **22c** and **24**.

**22c**    *<Set up parameters for reading a sector 22a>+≡* (20c) <**22a** **22e**>  
           LDA     **BOOT1\_SECTOR\_TRANSLATE\_TABLE,X**  
           STA     **IWMSECTOR**

Uses `BOOT1_SECTOR_TRANSLATE_TABLE 22b` and `IWMSECTOR 203`.

**22d**    *<BOOT1 20a>+≡* <**20a** **24**>  
           *<BOOT1 sector translation table 22b>*

Then we transfer `BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR` into `IWMDATAPTR`, decrement `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM`, and load up the `X` register with `IWMSLTNDX`.

**22e**    *<Set up parameters for reading a sector 22a>+≡* (20c) <**22c**  
           DEC     **BOOT1\_SECTOR\_NUM**  
           LDA     **BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR+1**  
           STA     **IWMDATAPTR+1**  
           DEC     **BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR+1**  
           LDX     **IWMSLTNDX**

Uses `BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 20b`, `BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 20b`, `IWMDATAPTR 203`, and `IWMSLTNDX 203`.

Once BOOT1 has finished loading, it jumps to the second page it loaded, which is from sector 1. This is called BOOT2.

```
23  <Read BOOT2 from disk 20c>+≡ (20a) <20c
    .go_to_boot2
      INC    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
      INC    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1

      ; Set keyboard and screen as I/O, set all soft switches to defaults,
      ; e.g. text mode, lores graphics, etc.

      JSR    SETKBD
      JSR    SETVID
      JSR    INIT

      ; Go to BOOT2!

      LDX    IWMSLTNDX
      JMP    (BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR)
```

Uses BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR 20b, INIT 203, IWMSLTNDX 203, SETKBD 203, and SETVID 203.



```

24  <BOOT1 20a>+=≡<22d
    ; Initially, IWMDATAPTR is left with 0900 by the disk card. We initialize
    ; some of our vars only once, so we check IWMDATAPTR+1 to see if it's
    ; 09. If it is, we haven't yet initialized.

    LDA    IWMDATAPTR+1
    CMP    #$09
    BNE    .already_initted

.init_vars:
    ; Set the RDSECT_PTR to $CX5C, where X is the slot number
    ; of the disk card.

    LDA    IWMSLTNDX
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    ORA    #$C0
    STA    RDSECT_PTR+1
    LDA    #$5C
    STA    RDSECT_PTR

    ; Add BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM to the BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR page, since we will read
    ; backwards from BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM.

    CLC
    LDA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
    ADC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
    STA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1

.already_initted:
    LDX    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
    BMI    .go_to_boot2      ; Are we done?

    ; Translate logical sector to physical sector. This has to do with the way
    ; sectors on disk are interleaved for efficiency.

    LDA    BOOT1_SECTOR_TRANSLATE_TABLE,X
    STA    IWMSECTOR
    DEC    BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM
    LDA    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
    STA    IWMDATAPTR+1
    DEC    BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
    LDX    IWMSLTNDX

    ; The disk card's read sector function jumps back to BOOT1 after reading the
    ; sector. The sector to read is in IWMSECTOR, and the page to write
    ; the data to is in IWMDATAPTR+1. The X register contains the disk slot
    ; times 16.

```

```

        JMP      (RDSECT_PTR)

.go_to_boot2
        ; BOOT2 starts with sector 1, not sector 0, so increment the page from
        ; BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR by 2.

        INC      BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1
        INC      BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR+1

        ; Set keyboard and screen as I/O, set all soft switches to defaults,
        ; e.g. text mode, lores graphics, etc.

        JSR      SETKBD
        JSR      SETVID
        JSR      INIT

        ; Go to BOOT2!

        LDX      IWMSLTNDX
        JMP      (BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR)

        ORG      $084D
BOOT1_SECTOR_TRANSLATE_TABLE:
        HEX      00 0D 0B 09 07 05 03 01
        HEX      0E 0C 0A 08 06 04 02 0F

Uses BOOT1 20a, BOOT1_SECTOR_NUM 20b, BOOT1_SECTOR_TRANSLATE_TABLE 22b,
BOOT1_WRITE_ADDR 20b, INIT 203, IWMDATAPTR 203, IWMSECTOR 203, IWMSLTNDX 203,
RDSECT_PTR 203, SETKBD 203, and SETVID 203.

```

25      $\langle \textit{Jump to BOOT2 25} \rangle \equiv$  (20a)

## 3.2 BOOT2

BOOT2 loads 26 sectors starting from track 1 sector 0 into addresses \$0800-\$21FF, and then jumps to \$0800. Normally, BOOT2 loads DOS and jumps to it, but in this case we don't need DOS and go directly to the main program.

## Chapter 4

# The main program

This is the Z-machine proper.

We first clear out the top half of zero page (\$80-\$FF).

```
26a  <main 26a>≡ (207) 26b>
      main:
      SUBROUTINE

      CLD
      LDA      #$00
      LDY      #$80

      .clear:
      STA      $80,X
      INX
      BNE      .clear
```

Defines:

main, used in chunks 29b, 30, 40, 43, and 200b.

And we reset the 6502 stack pointer.

```
26b  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <26a 27>
      LDY      #$FF
      TXS
```

Next, we set up some variables. The printer output routine, `PRINTER_CSW`, is set to `$C100`. This is the address of the ROM of the card in slot 1, which is typically the printer card. It will be used later when outputting text to both screen and printer.

Next, we set `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` to zero, which will later cause the Z-machine to load the first page of Z-code into memory when the first instruction is retrieved.

The z-stack count, `STACK_COUNT`, is set to 1, and the z-stack pointer, `Z_SP`, is set to `$03E8`.

There are two page tables, `PAGE_L_TABLE` and `PAGE_H_TABLE`, which are set to `$2200` and `$2280`, respectively. These are used to map Z-machine memory pages to physical memory pages.

There are two other page tables, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` and `PREV_PAGE_TABLE`, which are set to `$2300` and `$2380`, respectively. Together this forms a doubly-linked list of pages.

```
27  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <26b 28a>
    .set_vars:
        ; Historical note: Setting PRINTER_CSW was originally a call to SINIT,
        ; "system-dependent initialization".
        LDA    #$C1
        STA    PRINTER_CSW+1
        LDA    #$00
        STA    PRINTER_CSW
        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        STOB   #$01, STACK_COUNT
        STOW   #$03E8, Z_SP
        STOB   #$FF, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1+6
        STOW   #$2200, PAGE_L_TABLE
        STOW   #$2280, PAGE_H_TABLE
        STOW   #$2300, NEXT_PAGE_TABLE
        STOW   #$2380, PREV_PAGE_TABLE
    Uses NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 204, PAGE_H_TABLE 204, PAGE_L_TABLE 204, PREV_PAGE_TABLE 204,
    PRINTER_CSW 204, STACK_COUNT 204, STOB 11b, STOW 10, ZCHAR_SCRATCH1 204,
    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 204, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2 204, and Z_SP 204.
```

Next, we initialize the page tables. This zeros out `PAGE_L_TABLE` and `PAGE_H_TABLE`, and then sets up the next and previous page tables. `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` is initialized to `01 02 03 ... 7F FF` and so on, while `PREV_PAGE_TABLE` is initialized to `FF 00 01 ... 7D 7E FF`. `FF` is the null pointer for this linked list.

```

28a  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <27 28b>
      LDY      #$00
      LDX      #$80      ; Max pages

      .loop_inc_dec_tables:
      LDA      #$00
      STA      (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
      STA      (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
      TYA
      CLC
      ADC      #$01
      STA      (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      TYA
      SEC
      SBC      #$01
      STA      (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      INY
      DEX
      BNE      .loop_inc_dec_tables
      DEY
      LDA      #$FF
      STA      (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y

```

Uses `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 204`, `PAGE_H_TABLE 204`, `PAGE_L_TABLE 204`, and `PREV_PAGE_TABLE 204`.

Next, we set `FIRST_Z_PAGE` to 0 (the head of the list), `LAST_Z_PAGE` to `#$7F` (the tail of the list), and `Z_HEADER_ADDR` to `$2C00`. `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is the address in memory where the Z-code image header is stored.

```

28b  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <28a 28c>
      STOB     #$00, FIRST_Z_PAGE
      STOB     #$7F, LAST_Z_PAGE
      STOW     #$2C00, Z_HEADER_ADDR

```

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE 204`, `LAST_Z_PAGE 204`, `STOB 11b`, and `STOW 10`.

Then we clear the screen.

```

28c  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <28b 29b>
      JSR      do_reset_window

```

Uses `do_reset_window 29a`.

```

29a  <Do reset window 29a>≡ (207)
      do_reset_window:
          JSR      reset_window
          RTS
Defines:
      do_reset_window, used in chunk 28c.
Uses reset_window 49.

```

Next, we start reading the image of Z-code from disk into memory. The first page of the image, which is the image header, gets loaded into the address stored in `Z_HEADER_ADDR`. This done through the `read_from_sector` routine, which reads the (256 byte) sector stored in `SCRATCH1`, relative to track 3 sector 0, into the address stored in `SCRATCH2`.

If there was an error reading, we jump back to the beginning of the main program and start again. This would result in a failure loop with no apparent output if the disk is damaged.

```

29b  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <28c 30>
      .read_z_image:
          MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
          STOW     #$0000, SCRATCH1
          JSR      read_from_sector

          ; Historical note: The original Infocom source code did not check
          ; for an error here.

          BCC      .no_error
          JMP      main
Uses MOVW 12a, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, main 26a, and read_from_sector 107.

```

If there was no error reading the image header, we write `#$FF` into byte 5 of the header, whose purpose is not known at this point. Then we load byte 4 of the header, which is the page for the “base of high memory”, and store it (plus 1) in `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES`.

Then, we read `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES-1` consecutive sectors after the header into consecutive memory.

Suppose `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is `$2C00`. We have already read the header sector in. Now suppose the base of high memory in the header is `#$01F6`. Then `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES` would be `#$02`, and we would read one sector into memory at `$2D00`.

In the case of Zork I, `Z_HEADER_ADDR` is `$2C00`, and the base of high memory is `#$47FF`. `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES` is thus `#$48`. So, we would read 71 more sectors into memory, from `$2D00` to `$73FF`.

```

30  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <29b 31a>
    .no_error:
        LDY    #$05
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        INC    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        LDA    #$00

    .read_another_sector:
        CLC                                ; "START2"
        ADC    #$01
        TAX
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    SCRATCH2+1
        LDA    Z_HEADER_ADDR
        STA    SCRATCH2
        TXA
        CMP    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        BEQ    .check_bit_0_flag    ; done loading
        PHA
        STA    SCRATCH1
        LDA    #$00
        STA    SCRATCH1+1
        JSR    read_from_sector

        ; Historical note: The original Infocom source code did not check
        ; for an error here.

        BCC    .no_error2
        JMP    main

```

```

.no_error2:
    PLA
    JMP      .read_another_sector
Uses NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, main 26a, and read_from_sector 107.

```

Next, we check the debug-on-start flag stored in bit 0 of byte 1 of the header, and if it isn't clear, we execute a BRK instruction. That drops the Apple II into its monitor, which allows debugging, however primitive by our modern standards.

This part was not in the original Infocom source code.

```

31a  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <30 31d>
      .check_bit_0_flag:
          LDY      #$01
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          AND      #$01
          EOR      #$01
          BEQ      .brk
Uses brk 31c.

31b  <die 31b>≡ (33b)
      .brk:
          JSR      brk
Uses brk 31c.

31c  <brk 31c>≡ (207)
      brk:
          BRK
Defines:
      brk, used in chunks 31, 33a, 35, 36, 158, 177b, 193, and 198.

```

Continuing after the load, we set the 24-bit Z\_PC program counter to its initial 16-bit value, which is stored in the header at bytes 6 and 7, bigendian. For Zork I, Z\_PC becomes #\$004859.

```

31d  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <31a 32>
      .store_initial_z_pc:
          LDY      #$07
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_PC
          DEY
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA      Z_PC+1
          LDA      #$00
          STA      Z_PC+2
Uses Z_PC 204.

```



Next, we load `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE` from the header at bytes `#$0C-$0D` and `#$18-$19`, respectively. Again, these are bigendian values, so get byte-swapped. These are relative to the beginning of the image, so we simply add the page of the image address to them. There is no need to add the low byte of the header address, since the header already begins on a page boundary.

For Zork I, the header values are `#$20DE` and `#$00CA`, respectively. This means that `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` is `$4CDE` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE` is `$2CCA`.

```

32  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <31d 33a>
    .store_z_global_vars_addr:
        LDY    #$0D
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        CLC
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1

    .store_z_abbrev_table_addr:
        LDY    #$19
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        STA    Z_ABBREV_TABLE
        DEY
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        CLC
        ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA    Z_ABBREV_TABLE+1

```

Uses `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR 204` and `Z_ABBREV_TABLE 204`.

Next, we set `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR` to the page-aligned memory address immediately after the image, and compare its page to the last viable RAM page. If it is greater, we hit a BRK instruction since there isn't enough memory to run the game.

For Zork I, `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR` is \$7400.

For a fully-populated Apple II (64k RAM), the last viable RAM page is `#$BF`.

```

33a  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <32 33b>
      LDA    #$00
      STA    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
      LDA    NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
      CLC
      ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
      STA    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
      JSR    locate_last_ram_page
      SEC
      SBC    AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
      BCC    .brk

```

Uses `AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR 204`, `NUM_IMAGE_PAGES 204`, and `brk 31c`.

We then store the difference as the last Z-image page in `LAST_Z_PAGE`, and the same, plus 1, in `FIRST_Z_PAGE`. We also set the next page table entry of the last page to `#$FF`.

For Zork I, `FIRST_Z_PAGE` is `#$4C`, and `LAST_Z_PAGE` is `#$4B`.

And lastly, we start the interpreter loop by executing the first instruction in z-code.

```

33b  <main 26a>+≡ (207) <33a
      TAY
      INY
      STY    FIRST_Z_PAGE
      TAY
      STY    LAST_Z_PAGE
      LDA    #$FF
      STA    (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y
      JMP    do_instruction

```

<die 31b>

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE 204`, `LAST_Z_PAGE 204`, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE 204`, and `do_instruction 112`.

To locate the last viable RAM page, we start with `$COFF` in `SCRATCH2`.

We then decrement the high byte of `SCRATCH2`, and read from the address twice. If it reads differently, we are not yet into viable RAM, so we decrement and try again.

Otherwise, we invert the byte, write it back, and read it back. Again, if it reads differently, we decrement and try again.

Finally, we return the high byte of `SCRATCH2`.

34 *⟨Locate last RAM page 34⟩*≡ (207)

```
locate_last_ram_page:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVB    #$C0, SCRATCH2+1
    MOVB    #$FF, SCRATCH2
    LDY     #$00

    .loop:
        DEC     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
        CMP     (SCRATCH2),Y
        BNE     .loop
        EOR     #$FF
        STA     (SCRATCH2),Y
        CMP     (SCRATCH2),Y
        BNE     .loop
        EOR     #$FF
        STA     (SCRATCH2),Y
        LDA     SCRATCH2+1
        RTS
```

Defines:

`locate_last_ram_addr`, never used.

Uses `MOVB 11b` and `SCRATCH2 204`.

## Chapter 5

# The Z-stack

The Z-stack is a stack of 16-bit values used by the Z-machine. It is not the same as the 6502 stack. The stack can hold values, but also holds call frames (see [Call](#)). The stack grows downwards in memory.

The stack pointer is `Z_SP`, and it points to the current top of the stack. The counter `STACK_COUNT` contains the current number of 16-bit elements on the stack.

As mentioned above, `STACK_COUNT`, is initialized to 1 and `Z_SP`, is initialized to `$03E8`.

Pushing a 16-bit value onto the stack involves placing the value at the next two free locations, low byte first, and then decrementing the stack pointer by 2. So for example, if pushing the value `#$1234` onto the stack, and `Z_SP` is `$03E8`, then `$03E7` will contain `#$34`, `$03E6` will contain `#$12`, and `Z_SP` will end up as `$03E6`. `STACK_COUNT` will also be incremented.

The `push` routine pushes the 16-byte value in `SCRATCH2` onto the stack. According to the code, if the number of elements becomes `#$B4` (180), the program will hit a `BRK` instruction.

```
35  <Push 35>≡ (207)
    push:
        SUBROUTINE

        SUBB    Z_SP, #$01
        LDY     #$00
        LDA     SCRATCH2
        STA     (Z_SP),Y
        SUBB    Z_SP, #$01
        LDA     SCRATCH2+1
```

```

    STA    (Z_SP),Y
    INC    STACK_COUNT
    LDA    STACK_COUNT
    CMP    #$B4
    BCC    .end
    JSR    brk

```

```

.end:
    RTS

```

Defines:

push, used in chunks 123, 124, 126–28, and 169b.

Uses SCRATCH2 204, STACK\_COUNT 204, SUBB 16b, Z.SP 204, and brk 31c.

The pop routine pops a 16-bit value from the stack into SCRATCH2, which increments Z.SP by 2, then decrements STACK\_COUNT. If STACK\_COUNT ends up as zero, the stack underflows and the program will hit a BRK instruction.

36     $\langle \text{Pop } 36 \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    pop:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$00
        LDA    (Z_SP),Y
        STA    SCRATCH2+1
        INCW    Z_SP
        LDA    (Z_SP),Y
        STA    SCRATCH2
        INCW    Z_SP
        DEC    STACK_COUNT
        BNE    .end
        JSR    brk
    .end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

pop, used in chunks 121, 124, 130, 168b, 169a, and 183a.

Uses INCW 13b, SCRATCH2 204, STACK\_COUNT 204, Z.SP 204, and brk 31c.

## Chapter 6

# Z-code

Z-code is not stored in memory in a linear fashion. Rather, it is stored in pages of 256 bytes, in the order that the Z-machine loads them. `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` is the address in memory that the current page of Z-code is stored in.

The `Z_PC` 24-bit address is an address into z-code. So, getting the next code byte translates to retrieving the byte at  $(\text{ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR}) + \text{Z\_PC}$  and incrementing the low byte of `Z_PC`.

Of course, if the low byte of `Z_PC` ends up as 0, we'll need to propagate the increment to its other bytes, but also invalidate the current code page.

This is handled through the `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` flag. If it is zero, then we will need to load a page of Z-code into `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR`.

As an example, when the Z-machine starts, `Z_PC` is `#$004859`, and `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` is 0. This means that we will have to load code page `#$48`.

```
37  <Get next code byte 37>≡ (207) 38>
    get_next_code_byte:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        BEQ    .zcode_page_invalid
        LDY    Z_PC                ; load from memory
        LDA    (ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR),Y
        INY
        STY    Z_PC
        BEQ    .invalidate_zcode_page ; next byte in next page?
        RTS

    .invalidate_zcode_page:
```

```

LDY    #$00
STY    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
INC     Z_PC+1
BNE     .end
INC     Z_PC+2

```

```

.end:
RTS

```

Defines:

get\_next\_code\_byte, used in chunks 39, 112, 113a, 120, 121, 123, 126c, 127, 161, and 162.  
 Uses ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 204, and Z\_PC 204.

As an example, on start, Z\_PC is #\$004859, so we have to access code page #\$0048. Since the high byte isn't set, we know that the code page is in memory. If the high byte were set, we would have to locate that page in memory, and if it isn't there, we would have to load it from disk.

But let's suppose that Z\_PC were #\$014859. We would have to access code page #\$0148. Initially, PAGE\_L\_TABLE and PAGE\_H\_TABLE are zeroed out, so find\_index\_of\_page\_table would return with carry set and the A register set to LAST\_Z\_PAGE (\$4B).

```

38  <Get next code byte 37>+≡ (207) <37 39>
      .zcode_page_invalid:
          LDA     Z_PC+2
          BNE     .find_pc_page_in_page_table
          LDA     Z_PC+1
          CMP     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
          BCC     .set_page_addr

      .find_pc_page_in_page_table:
          LDA     Z_PC+1
          STA     SCRATCH2
          LDA     Z_PC+2
          STA     SCRATCH2+1
          JSR     find_index_of_page_table
          STA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
          BCS     .not_found_in_page_table

      .set_page_first:
          JSR     set_page_first
          CLC
          LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
          ADC     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES

```

Defines:

.zcode\_page\_invalid, never used.  
 Uses NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES 204, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX 204, SCRATCH2 204, Z\_PC 204,  
 find\_index\_of\_page\_table 41, and set\_page\_first 42.

Once we've ensured that the desired Z-code page is in memory, we can add the page to the page of `Z_HEADER_ADDR` and store in `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR`. We also set the low byte of `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR` to zero since we're guaranteed to be at the top of the page. We also set `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` to true. And finally we go back to the beginning of the routine to get the next code byte.

```

39  <Get next code byte 37>+≡ (207) <38 40>
    .set_page_addr:
        CLC
        ADC     Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR+1
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
        JMP     get_next_code_byte

```

Defines:

`.set_page_addr`, never used.

Uses `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR 204`, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 204`, and `get_next_code_byte 37`.



If the page we need isn't found in the page table, we need to load it from disk, and it gets loaded into AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR plus PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX pages. On a good read, we store the z-page value into the page table.

```

40  <Get next code byte 37>+≡ (207) <39
    .not_found_in_page_table:
        CMP     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        BNE     .read_from_disk
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2

    .read_from_disk:
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
        STA     SCRATCH2
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        CLC
        ADC     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     Z_PC+1
        STA     SCRATCH1
        LDA     Z_PC+2
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        JSR     read_from_sector
        BCC     .good_read
        JMP     main

    .good_read:
        LDY     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        LDA     Z_PC+1
        STA     (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        LDA     Z_PC+2
        STA     (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        TYA
        JMP     .set_page_first

```

Defines:

.not\_found\_in\_page\_table, never used.

Uses AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR 204, PAGE\_H\_TABLE 204, PAGE\_L\_TABLE 204, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX 204, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 204, Z\_PC 204, main 26a, read\_from\_sector 107, and set\_page\_first 42.

Given a page-aligned address in SCRATCH2, this routine searches through the PAGE\_L\_TABLE and PAGE\_H\_TABLE for that address, returning the index found in A (or LAST\_Z\_PAGE if not found). The carry flag is clear if the page was found, otherwise it is set.

```

41  <Find index of page table 41>≡ (207)
    find_index_of_page_table:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDX    FIRST_Z_PAGE
            LDY    #$00
            LDA    SCRATCH2

        .loop:
            CMP    (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
            BNE    .next
            LDA    SCRATCH2+1
            CMP    (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
            BEQ    .found
            LDA    SCRATCH2

        .next:
            INY
            DEX
            BNE    .loop
            LDA    LAST_Z_PAGE
            SEC
            RTS

        .found:
            TYA
            CLC
            RTS

```

Defines:

find\_index\_of\_page\_table, used in chunks 38 and 43.

Uses FIRST\_Z\_PAGE 204, LAST\_Z\_PAGE 204, PAGE\_H\_TABLE 204, PAGE\_L\_TABLE 204,  
and SCRATCH2 204.

Setting page A first is a matter of fiddling with all the pointers in the right order. Of course, if it's already the `FIRST_Z_PAGE`, we're done.

```

42  <Set page first 42>≡ (207)
    set_page_first:
        SUBROUTINE

            CMP     FIRST_Z_PAGE
            BEQ     .end
            LDX     FIRST_Z_PAGE          ; prev_first = FIRST_Z_PAGE
            STA     FIRST_Z_PAGE          ; FIRST_Z_PAGE = A

            TAY
            LDA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; SCRATCH2L = NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE]
            STA     SCRATCH2
            TXA
            STA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE] = prev_first

            LDA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; SCRATCH2H = PREV_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE]
            STA     SCRATCH2+1
            LDA     #$FF
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[FIRST_Z_PAGE] = #$FF
            LDY     SCRATCH2+1
            LDA     SCRATCH2
            STA     (NEXT_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; NEXT_PAGE_TABLE[SCRATCH2H] = SCRATCH2L
            TXA
            TAY
            LDA     FIRST_Z_PAGE
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[prev_first] = FIRST_Z_PAGE
            LDA     SCRATCH2
            CMP     #$FF
            BEQ     .set_last_z_page
            TAY
            LDA     SCRATCH2+1
            STA     (PREV_PAGE_TABLE),Y   ; PREV_PAGE_TABLE[SCRATCH2L] = SCRATCH2H

        .end:
            RTS

        .set_last_z_page:
            LDA     SCRATCH2+1          ; LAST_Z_PAGE = SCRATCH2H
            STA     LAST_Z_PAGE
            RTS

```

Defines:

`set_page_first`, used in chunks 38, 40, and 43.

Uses `FIRST_Z_PAGE` 204, `LAST_Z_PAGE` 204, `NEXT_PAGE_TABLE` 204, `PREV_PAGE_TABLE` 204, and `SCRATCH2` 204.

The `get_next_code_byte2` routine is identical to `get_next_code_byte`, except that it uses a second set of Z\_PC variables: `Z_PC2`, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2`, `ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2`, and `PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2`.

Note that the three bytes of `Z_PC2` are not stored in memory in the same order as `Z_PC`, which is why we separate out the bytes into `Z_PC2_HH`, `Z_PC2_H`, and `Z_PC2_L`.

```

43  <Get next code byte 2 43>≡ (207)
    get_next_code_byte2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        BEQ      .zcode_page_invalid
        LDY      Z_PC2_L
        LDA      (ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2),Y
        INY
        STY      Z_PC2_L
        BEQ      .invalidate_zcode_page
        RTS

    .invalidate_zcode_page:
        LDY      #$00
        STY      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        INC      Z_PC2_H
        BNE      .end
        INC      Z_PC2_HH

    .end:
        RTS

    .zcode_page_invalid:
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        BNE      .find_pc_page_in_page_table
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        CMP      NUM_IMAGE_PAGES
        BCC      .set_page_addr

    .find_pc_page_in_page_table:
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        JSR      find_index_of_page_table
        STA      PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        BCS      .not_found_in_page_table

    .set_page_first:
        JSR      set_page_first
        CLC

```

```

        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        ADC     NUM_IMAGE_PAGES

.set_page_addr:
        CLC
        ADC     Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2+1
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2
        LDA     #$FF
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        JMP     get_next_code_byte2

.not_found_in_page_table:
        CMP     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX
        BNE     .read_from_disk
        LDA     #$00
        STA     ZCODE_PAGE_VALID

.read_from_disk:
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR
        STA     SCRATCH2
        LDA     AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        CLC
        ADC     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     SCRATCH2+1
        LDA     Z_PC2_H
        STA     SCRATCH1
        LDA     Z_PC2_HH
        STA     SCRATCH1+1
        JSR     read_from_sector
        BCC     .good_read
        JMP     main

.good_read:
        LDY     PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2
        LDA     Z_PC2_H
        STA     (PAGE_L_TABLE),Y
        LDA     Z_PC2_HH
        STA     (PAGE_H_TABLE),Y
        TYA
        JMP     .set_page_first

```

Defines:

get\_next\_code\_byte2, used in chunks 45a and 166a.

Uses AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR 204, NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES 204, PAGE\_H\_TABLE 204, PAGE\_L\_TABLE 204, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX 204, PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 204, Z\_PC2\_H 204, Z\_PC2\_HH 204, Z\_PC2\_L 204, find\_index\_of\_page\_table 41, main 26a, read\_from\_sector 107,

and `set_page_first` 42.

That routine is used in `get_next_code_word`, which simply gets a 16-bit bigendian value at `Z_PC2` and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

45a  $\langle \textit{Get next code word 45a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

get_next_code_word:
  SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_next_code_byte2
      PHA
      JSR      get_next_code_byte2
      STA      SCRATCH2
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      RTS

```

Defines:

`get_next_code_word`, used in chunks 61 and 165b.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204 and `get_next_code_byte2` 43.

The `load_address` routine copies `SCRATCH2` to `Z_PC2`.

45b  $\langle \textit{Load address 45b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

load_address:
  SUBROUTINE

      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      Z_PC2_L
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1
      STA      Z_PC2_H
      LDA      #$00
      STA      Z_PC2_HH

```

Defines:

`load_address`, used in chunks 137, 165b, 166a, and 185b.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `Z_PC2_H` 204, `Z_PC2_HH` 204, and `Z_PC2_L` 204.

The `load_packed_address` routine multiplies `SCRATCH2` by 2 and stores the result in `Z_PC2`.

```
46  <Load packed address 46>≡ (207)
    invalidate_zcode_page2:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        RTS

    load_packed_address:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    SCRATCH2
        ASL
        STA    Z_PC2_L
        LDA    SCRATCH2+1
        ROL
        STA    Z_PC2_H
        LDA    #$00
        ROL
        STA    Z_PC2_HH
        JMP    invalidate_zcode_page2
```

Defines:

`invalidate_zcode_page2`, never used.

`load_packed_address`, used in chunks 65 and 186c.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2` 204, `Z_PC2_H` 204, `Z_PC2_HH` 204, and `Z_PC2_L` 204.

# Chapter 7

## I/O

### 7.1 Strings and output

#### 7.1.1 The Apple II text screen

The `cout_string` routine stores a pointer to the ASCII string to print in `SCRATCH2`, and the number of characters to print in the `X` register. It uses the `COUT1` routine to output characters to the screen.

Apple II Monitors Peeled describes `COUT1` as writing the byte in the `A` register to the screen at cursor position `CV`, `CH`, using `INVFLG` and supporting cursor movement.

The difference between `COUT` and `COUT1` is that `COUT1` always prints to the screen, while `COUT` prints to whatever device is currently set as the output (e.g. a modem).

See also [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 61 for an explanation of these routines.

The logical-or with `#$80` sets the high bit, which causes `COUT1` to output normal characters. Without it, the characters would be in inverse text.

```
47  <Output string to console 47>≡ (207)
    cout_string:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$00

    .loop:
```



```

    LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    ORA    #$80
    JSR    COUT1
    INY
    DEX
    BNE    .loop
    RTS

```

Defines:

    cout\_string, used in chunks 54, 69, and 145.  
 Uses COUT1 203 and SCRATCH2 204.

The home routine calls the ROM HOME routine, which clears the scroll window and sets the cursor to the top left corner of the window. This routine, however, also loads CURR\_LINE with the top line of the window.

```

48  <Home 48>≡ (207)
    home:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR    HOME
        LDA    WNDTOP
        STA    CURR_LINE
        RTS

```

Defines:

    home, used in chunks 49 and 143.  
 Uses CURR\_LINE 204, HOME 203, and WNDTOP 203.

The `reset_window` routine sets the top left and bottom right of the screen scroll window to their full-screen values, sets the input prompt character to `>`, resets the inverse flag to `#$FF` (do not invert), then calls `home` to reset the cursor.

```

49  <Reset window 49>≡ (207)
    reset_window:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #1
        STA    WNDTOP
        LDA    #0
        STA    WNDLFT
        LDA    #40
        STA    WNDWDTH
        LDA    #24
        STA    WNDBTM
        LDA    #$3E    ; '>'
        STA    PROMPT
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    INVFLG
        JSR    home
        RTS

```

Defines:

`reset_window`, used in chunk 29a.

Uses `INVFLG` 203, `PROMPT` 203, `WNDBTM` 203, `WNDLFT` 203, `WNDTOP` 203, `WNDWDTH` 203, and `home` 48.

### 7.1.2 The text buffer

When printing to the screen, Zork breaks lines between words. To do this, we buffer characters into the `BUFF_AREA`, which starts at address `$0200`. The offset into the area to put the next character into is in `BUFF_END`.

The `dump_buffer_to_screen` routine dumps the current buffer line to the screen, and then zeros `BUFF_END`.

```

50  <Dump buffer to screen 50>≡ (207)
    dump_buffer_to_screen:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX    #$00

    .loop:
        CPX    BUFF_END
        BEQ    .done
        LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
        JSR    COUT1
        INX
        JMP    .loop

    .done:
        LDX    #$00
        STX    BUFF_END
        RTS

```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_to_screen`, used in chunks 53 and 69.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204, `BUFF_END` 204, and `COUT1` 203.

Zork also has the option to send all output to the printer, and the `dump_buffer_to_printer` routine is the printer version of `dump_buffer_to_screen`.

Output to the printer involves temporarily changing `CSW` (initially `COUT1`) to the printer output routine at `PRINTER_CSW`, calling `COUT` with the characters to print, then restoring `CSW`. Note that we call `COUT`, not `COUT1`.

See [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 61 for an explanation of these routines.

If the printer hasn't yet been initialized, we send the command string `ctrl-I80N`, which according to the Apple II Parallel Printer Interface Card Installation and Operation Manual, sets the printer to output 80 characters per line.

There is one part of initialization which isn't clear. It stores `#$91`, corresponding to character `Q`, into a screen memory hole at `$0779`. The purpose of doing this is not known.

See [Understanding the Apple //e](#) (Sather, 1985) figure 5.5 for details on screen holes.

See [Apple II Reference Manual](#) (Apple, 1979) page 82 for a possible explanation, where `$0779` is part of `SCRATCHpad` RAM for slot 1, which is typically where the printer card would be placed. Maybe writing `#$91` to `$0779` was necessary to enable command mode for certain cards.

```
51  <Dump buffer to printer 51>≡ (207)
    printer_card_initialized_flag:
        BYTE    00

    dump_buffer_to_printer:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA     CSW
        PHA
        LDA     CSW+1
        PHA
        LDA     PRINTER_CSW
        STA     CSW
        LDA     PRINTER_CSW+1
        STA     CSW+1
        LDX     #$00
        LDA     printer_card_initialized_flag
        BNE     .loop
        INC     printer_card_initialized_flag

    .printer_set_80_column_output:
        LDA     #$09      ; ctrl-I
        JSR     COUT
        LDA     #$91      ; 'Q'
```

```
    STA    $0779    ; Scratchpad RAM for slot 1.
    LDA    #$B8     ; '8'
    JSR    COUT
    LDA    #$B0     ; '0'
    JSR    COUT
    LDA    #$CE     ; 'N'
    JSR    COUT

.loop:
    CPX    BUFF_END
    BEQ    .done
    LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
    JSR    COUT
    INX
    JMP    .loop

.done:
    LDA    CSW
    STA    PRINTER_CSW
    LDA    CSW+1
    STA    PRINTER_CSW+1
    PLA
    STA    CSW+1
    PLA
    STA    CSW
    RTS
```

Defines:

    dump\_buffer\_to\_printer, used in chunks 53 and 71.

    printer\_card\_initialized\_flag, never used.

Uses BUFF\_AREA 204, BUFF\_END 204, COUT 203, CSW 203, and PRINTER\_CSW 204.

Tying these two routines together is `dump_buffer_line`, which dumps the current buffer line to the screen, and optionally the printer, depending on the printer output flag stored in bit 0 of offset `#$11` in the Z-machine header. Presumably this bit is set (in the Z-code itself) when you type `SCRIPT` on the Zork command line, and unset when you type `UNSCRIPT`.

```
53  <Dump buffer line 53>≡ (207)
    dump_buffer_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY    #$11
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        AND    #$01
        BEQ    .skip_printer
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_printer

        .skip_printer:
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_screen
        RTS
```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_line`, used in chunks 55a, 69, 71, 145, 147a, and 148.  
Uses `dump_buffer_to_printer` 51 and `dump_buffer_to_screen` 50.

The `dump_buffer_with_more` routine dumps the buffered line, but first, we check if we've reached the bottom of the screen by comparing `CURR_LINE >= WNDBTM`. If true, we print `[MORE]` in inverse text, wait for the user to hit a character, set `CURR_LINE` to `WNDTOP + 1`, and continue.

```
54  <Dump buffer with more 54>≡ (207) 55a>
    string_more:
        DC      "[MORE]"

    dump_buffer_with_more:
        SUBROUTINE

        INC     CURR_LINE
        LDA     CURR_LINE
        CMP     WNDBTM
        BCC     .good_to_go      ; haven't reached bottom of screen yet

        STOW    string_more, SCRATCH2
        LDX     #6

        LDA     #$3F
        STA     INVFLG
        JSR     cout_string      ; print [MORE] in inverse text

        LDA     #$FF
        STA     INVFLG

        JSR     RDKEY            ; wait for keypress
        LDA     CH
        SEC
        SBC     #$06
        STA     CH                ; move cursor back 6
        JSR     CLREOL           ; and clear the line
        LDA     WNDTOP
        STA     CURR_LINE
        INC     CURR_LINE        ; start at top of screen

    .good_to_go:
```

Defines:

`dump_buffer_with_more`, used in chunks 57, 58b, 143, 145, 147, 148, 200b, and 201.

Uses `CH` 203, `CLREOL` 203, `CURR_LINE` 204, `INVFLG` 203, `RDKEY` 203, `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, `WNDBTM` 203, `WNDTOP` 203, and `cout_string` 47.

Next, we call `dump_buffer_line` to output the buffer to the screen. If we haven't yet reached the end of the line, then output a newline character to the screen.

```
55a  <Dump buffer with more 54>+≡ (207) <54 55b>
      LDA      BUFF_END
      PHA
      JSR      dump_buffer_line
      PLA
      CMP      WNDWIDTH
      BEQ      .skip_newline
      LDA      #$8D
      JSR      COUT1
```

`.skip_newline:`

Uses `BUFF_END` 204, `COUT1` 203, `WNDWIDTH` 203, and `dump_buffer_line` 53.

Next, we check if we are also outputting to the printer. If so, we output a newline to the printer as well. Note that we've already output the line to the printer in `dump_buffer_line`, so we only need to output a newline here.

```
55b  <Dump buffer with more 54>+≡ (207) <55a 56>
      LDY      #$11
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      AND      #$01
      BEQ      .reset_buffer_end

      LDA      CSW
      PHA
      LDA      CSW+1
      PHA
      LDA      PRINTER_CSW
      STA      CSW
      LDA      PRINTER_CSW+1
      STA      CSW+1

      LDA      #$8D
      JSR      COUT

      LDA      CSW
      STA      PRINTER_CSW
      LDA      CSW+1
      STA      PRINTER_CSW+1
      PLA
      STA      CSW+1
      PLA
      STA      CSW
```

`.reset_buffer_end:`

Uses `COUT` 203, `CSW` 203, and `PRINTER_CSW` 204.



The last step is to set `BUFF_END` to zero.

```
56  <Dump buffer with more 54>+≡ (207) <55b
      LDX      #$00
      JMP      buffer_char_set_buffer_end
Uses buffer_char_set.buffer_end 57.
```

The high-level routine `buffer_char` places the ASCII character in the A register into the end of the buffer.

If the character was a newline, then we tail-call to `dump_buffer_with_more` to dump the buffer to the output and return. Calling `dump_buffer_with_more` also resets `BUFF_END` to zero.

Otherwise, the character is first converted to uppercase if it is lowercase, then stored in the buffer and, if we haven't yet hit the end of the row, we increment `BUFF_END` and then return.

Control characters (those under `#$20`) are not put in the buffer, and simply ignored.

```
57  <Buffer a character 57>≡ (207) 58a>
    buffer_char:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDX     BUFF_END
        CMP     #$0D
        BNE     .not_OD
        JMP     dump_buffer_with_more

    .not_OD:
        CMP     #$20
        BCC     buffer_char_set_buffer_end
        CMP     #$60
        BCC     .store_char
        CMP     #$80
        BCS     .store_char
        SEC
        SBC     #$20                ; converts to uppercase

    .store_char:
        ORA     #$80                ; sets as normal text
        STA     BUFF_AREA,X
        CPX     WNDWIDTH
        BCS     .hit_right_limit
        INX

    buffer_char_set_buffer_end:
        STX     BUFF_END
        RTS

    .hit_right_limit:
```

Defines:

`buffer_char`, used in chunks 59b, 66a, 67c, 69, 103, 104, 144a, 146, 182b, 184b, and 185c.

`buffer_char_set_buffer_end`, used in chunk 56.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204, `BUFF_END` 204, `WNDWIDTH` 203, and `dump_buffer_with_more` 54.

If we have hit the end of a row, we're going to put the word we just wrote onto the next line.

To do that, we search for the position of the last space in the buffer, or if there wasn't any space, we just use the position of the end of the row.

58a  $\langle$ Buffer a character 57 $\rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle$ 57 58b $\rangle$   
       LDA       #\$A0 ; normal space

```
.loop:
    CMP     BUFF_AREA,X
    BEQ     .endloop
    DEX
    BNE     .loop
    LDX     WNDWDTH
```

```
.endloop:
```

Uses BUFF\_AREA 204 and WNDWDTH 203.

Now that we've found the position to break the line at, we dump the buffer up until that position using `dump_buffer_with_more`, which also resets `BUFF_END` to zero.

58b  $\langle$ Buffer a character 57 $\rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle$ 58a 59a $\rangle$   
       STX       BUFF\_LINE\_LEN  
       STX       BUFF\_END  
       JSR       dump\_buffer\_with\_more

Uses BUFF\_END 204, BUFF\_LINE\_LEN 204, and dump\_buffer\_with\_more 54.

Next, we increment `BUFF_LINE_LEN` to skip past the space. If we're past the window width though, we take the last character we added, move it to the end of the buffer (which should be the beginning of the buffer), increment `BUFF_END`, then we increment `BUFF_LINE_LEN`.

```
59a  <Buffer a character 57>+≡ (207) <58b
      .increment_length:
          INC      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          LDX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          CPX      WNDWDTH
          BCC      .move_last_char
          BEQ      .move_last_char
          RTS

      .move_last_char:
          LDA      BUFF_AREA,X
          LDX      BUFF_END
          STA      BUFF_AREA,X
          INC      BUFF_END
          LDX      BUFF_LINE_LEN
          JMP      .increment_length
```

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204, `BUFF_END` 204, `BUFF_LINE_LEN` 204, and `WNDWDTH` 203.

We can print an ASCII string with the `print_ascii_string` routine. It takes the length of the string in the X register, and the address of the string in `SCRATCH2`. It calls `buffer_char` to buffer each character in the string.

```
59b  <Print ASCII string 59b>≡ (207)
      print_ascii_string:
          SUBROUTINE

          STX      SCRATCH3
          LDY      #$00
          STY      SCRATCH3+1

      .loop:
          LDY      SCRATCH3+1
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          JSR      buffer_char
          INC      SCRATCH3+1
          DEC      SCRATCH3
          BNE      .loop
          RTS
```

Defines:

`print_ascii_string`, used in chunks 143, 145, 147a, 148, and 201.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, and `buffer_char` 57.

### 7.1.3 Z-coded strings

For how strings and characters are encoded, see [section 3 of the Z-machine standard](#).

The alphabet shifts are stored in `SHIFT_ALPHABET` for a one-character shift, and `SHIFT_LOCK_ALPHABET` for a locked shift. The routine `get_alphabet` gets the alphabet to use, accounting for shifts.

```
60  <Get alphabet 60>≡ (207)
    get_alphabet:
        LDA     SHIFT_ALPHABET
        BPL     .remove_shift
        LDA     LOCKED_ALPHABET
        RTS

    .remove_shift:
        LDY     #$FF
        STY     SHIFT_ALPHABET
        RTS
```

Defines:

`get_alphabet`, used in chunks 63a and 64.

Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET 204` and `SHIFT_ALPHABET 204`.

Since z-characters are encoded three at a time in two consecutive bytes in z-code, there's a state machine which determines where we are in the decompression. The state is stored in `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE`.

If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 0, then we need to load the next two bytes from z-code and extract the first character. If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 1, then we need to extract the second character. If `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is 2, then we need to extract the third character. And finally if `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` is -1, then we've reached the end of the string.

The z-character is returned in the A register. Furthermore, the carry is set when requesting the next character, but we've already reached the end of the string. Otherwise the carry is cleared.

```

61  <Get next zchar 61>≡ (207)
    get_next_zchar:
        LDA     ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        BPL     .check_for_char_1
        SEC
        RTS

    .check_for_char_1:
        BNE     .check_for_char_2
        INC     ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        JSR     get_next_code_word
        LDA     SCRATCH2
        STA     ZCHARS_L
        LDA     SCRATCH2+1
        STA     ZCHARS_H
        LDA     ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LSR
        AND     #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

    .check_for_char_2:
        SEC
        SBC     #$01
        BNE     .check_for_last
        LDA     #$02
        STA     ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        LDA     ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LDA     ZCHARS_L
        ROR
        TAY
        LDA     ZCHARS_H
        LSR
        LSR

```

```

        TYA
        ROR
        LSR
        LSR
        LSR
        AND    #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

.check_for_last:
        LDA    #$00
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        LDA    ZCHARS_H
        BPL    .get_char_3
        LDA    #$FF
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE

.get_char_3:
        LDA    ZCHARS_L
        AND    #$1F
        CLC
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_next_zchar`, used in chunks 63a, 65, and 68a.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `ZCHARS_H` 204, `ZCHARS_L` 204, `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` 204,  
and `get_next_code_word` 45a.

The `print_zstring` routine prints the z-encoded string at `Z_PC2` to the screen. It uses `get_next_zchar` to get the next z-character, and handles alphabet shifts.

We first initialize the shift state.

```

62  <Print zstring 62>≡ (207) 63a>
    print_zstring:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    #$00
        STA    LOCKED_ALPHABET
        STA    ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        STOB    #$FF, SHIFT_ALPHABET

```

Defines:

`print_zstring`, used in chunks 65, 68b, 137, and 159b.

Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 204, `SHIFT_ALPHABET` 204, `STOB` 11b, and `ZDECOMPRESS_STATE` 204.

Next, we loop through the z-string, getting each z-character. We have to handle special z-characters separately.

z-character 0 is always a space.

z-character 1 means to look at the next z-character and use it as an index into the abbreviation table, printing that string.

z-characters 2 and 3 shifts the alphabet forwards (A0 to A1 to A2 to A0) and backwards (A0 to A2 to A1 to A0) respectively.

z-characters 4 and 5 shift-locks the alphabet.

All other characters will get translated to the ASCII character using the current alphabet.

```

63a  <Print zstring 62>+≡ (207) <62
      .loop:
          JSR      get_next_zchar
          BCC      .not_end
          RTS

      .not_end:
          STA      SCRATCH3
          BEQ      .space          ; z-char 0?
          CMP      #$01
          BEQ      .abbreviation   ; z-char 1?
          CMP      #$04
          BCC      .shift_alphabet  ; z-char 2 or 3?
          CMP      #$06
          BCC      .shift_lock_alphabet ; z-char 4 or 5?
          JSR      get_alphabet

          ; fall through to print the z-character
          <Print the zchar 66a>
Uses SCRATCH3 204, get_alphabet 60, and get_next_zchar 61.

```

```

63b  <Printing a space 63b>≡ (207)
      .space:
          LDA      #$20
          JMP      .printchar
Defines:
      .space, never used.

```



64     $\langle$ *Shifting alphabets* 64 $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
.shift_alphabet:
    JSR     get_alphabet
    CLC
    ADC     #$02
    ADC     SCRATCH3
    JSR     A_mod_3
    STA     SHIFT_ALPHABET
    JMP     .loop

.shift_lock_alphabet:
    JSR     get_alphabet
    CLC
    ADC     SCRATCH3
    JSR     A_mod_3
    STA     LOCKED_ALPHABET
    JMP     .loop
```

Defines:

.shift\_alphabet, never used.

.shift\_lock\_alphabet, never used.

Uses A\_mod\_3 102, LOCKED\_ALPHABET 204, SCRATCH3 204, SHIFT\_ALPHABET 204,  
and get\_alphabet 60.

When printing an abbreviation, we multiply the z-character by 2 to get an address index into `Z_ABBREV_TABLE`. The address from the table is then stored in `SCRATCH2`, and we recurse into `print_zstring` to print the abbreviation. This involves saving and restoring the current decompress state.

```

65  <Printing an abbreviation 65>≡ (207)
    .abbreviation:
        JSR      get_next_zchar
        ASL
        ADC      #$01
        TAY
        LDA      (Z_ABBREV_TABLE),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        DEY
        LDA      (Z_ABBREV_TABLE),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1

        ; Save the decompress state

        LDA      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        PHA
        LDA      ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        PHA
        LDA      ZCHARS_L
        PHA
        LDA      ZCHARS_H
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_L
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_H
        PHA
        LDA      Z_PC2_HH
        PHA

        JSR      load_packed_address
        JSR      print_zstring

        ; Restore the decompress state

        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_HH
        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_H
        PLA
        STA      Z_PC2_L
        LDA      #$00
        STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
        PLA
        STA      ZCHARS_H
        PLA

```

```

        STA      ZCHARS_L
        PLA
        STA      ZDECOMPRESS_STATE
        PLA
        STA      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        LDA      #$FF          ; Resets any temporary shift
        STA      SHIFT_ALPHABET
        JMP      .loop

```

Defines:

.abbreviation, never used.

Uses LOCKED\_ALPHABET 204, SCRATCH2 204, SHIFT\_ALPHABET 204, ZCHARS\_H 204, ZCHARS\_L 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 204, ZDECOMPRESS\_STATE 204, Z\_ABBREV\_TABLE 204, Z\_PC2\_H 204, Z\_PC2\_HH 204, Z\_PC2\_L 204, get\_next\_zchar 61, load\_packed\_address 46, and print\_zstring 62.

If we are on alphabet 0, then we print the ASCII character directly by adding #\$5B. Remember that we are handling 26 z-characters 6-31, so the ASCII characters will be a-z.

66a    *<Print the zchar 66a>*≡ (63a) 66b>

```

        ORA      #$00
        BNE      .check_for_alphabet_A1
        LDA      #$5B

```

.add\_ascii\_offset:

```

        CLC
        ADC      SCRATCH3

```

.printchar:

```

        JSR      buffer_char
        JMP      .loop

```

Uses SCRATCH3 204 and buffer\_char 57.

Alphabet 1 handles uppercase characters A-Z, so we add #\$3B to the z-char.

66b    *<Print the zchar 66a>+≡ (63a) <66a 67b>*

```

        .check_for_alphabet_A1:
        CMP      #$01
        BNE      .map_ascii_for_A2
        LDA      #$3B
        JMP      .add_ascii_offset

```

Defines:

.check\_for\_alphabet\_A1, never used.

Alphabet 2 is more complicated because it doesn't map consecutively onto ASCII characters.

z-character 6 in alphabet 2 means that the two subsequent z-characters specify a ten-bit ZSCII character code: the next z-character gives the top 5 bits and the one after the bottom 5. However, in this version of the interpreter, only 8 bits are kept, and these are simply ASCII values.

z-character 7 causes a CRLF to be output.

Otherwise, we map the z-character to the ASCII character using the `a2_table` table.

```
67a  <A2 table 67a>≡ (207)
      a2_table:
          DC      "0123456789.,! ?_#"
          DC      ' '
          DC      "'/\-:()"
```

Defines:

`a2_table`, used in chunks 67b and 88b.

```
67b  <Print the zchar 66a>+≡ (63a) <66b
      .map_ascii_for_A2:
          LDA      SCRATCH3
          SEC
          SBC      #$07
          BCC      .z10bits
          BEQ      .crlf
          TAY
          DEY
          LDA      a2_table,Y
          JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

`.map_ascii_for_A2`, never used.

Uses `SCRATCH3` 204 and `a2_table` 67a.

```
67c  <Printing a CRLF 67c>≡ (207)
      .crlf:
          LDA      #$0D
          JSR      buffer_char
          LDA      #$0A
          JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

`.crlf`, never used.

Uses `buffer_char` 57.

68a    *⟨Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 68a⟩*≡ (207)

```
.z10bits:
    JSR      get_next_zchar
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    ASL
    PHA
    JSR      get_next_zchar
    STA      SCRATCH3
    PLA
    ORA      SCRATCH3
    JMP      .printchar
```

Defines:

.z10bits, never used.

Uses SCRATCH3 204 and get\_next\_zchar 61.

print\_string\_literal is a high-level routine that prints a string literal to the screen, where the string literal is in z-code at the current Z\_PC.

68b    *⟨Printing a string literal 68b⟩*≡ (207)

```
print_string_literal:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA      Z_PC
    STA      Z_PC2_L
    LDA      Z_PC+1
    STA      Z_PC2_H
    LDA      Z_PC+2
    STA      Z_PC2_HH
    LDA      #$00
    STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
    JSR      print_zstring
    LDA      Z_PC2_L
    STA      Z_PC
    LDA      Z_PC2_H
    STA      Z_PC+1
    LDA      Z_PC2_HH
    STA      Z_PC+2
    LDA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2
    STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
    LDA      ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2
    STA      ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR
    LDA      ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2+1
    STA      ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR+1
    RTS
```

Uses ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2 204, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 204,  
ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2 204, Z\_PC 204, Z\_PC2\_H 204, Z\_PC2\_HH 204, Z\_PC2\_L 204,  
and print\_zstring 62.

## The status line

Printing the status line involves saving the current cursor location, moving the cursor to the top left of the screen, setting inverse text, printing the current room name at column 0, printing the score at column 25, resetting inverse text, and then restoring the cursor location.

```

69  <Print status line 69>≡ (207)
    sScore:
        DC      "SCORE:"

    print_status_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      dump_buffer_line
        LDA      CH
        PHA
        LDA      CV
        PHA
        LDA      #$00
        STA      CH
        STA      CV
        JSR      VTAB
        LDA      #$3F
        STA      INVFLG
        JSR      CLREOL

        LDA      #VAR_CURR_ROOM
        JSR      var_get
        JSR      print_obj_in_A
        JSR      dump_buffer_to_screen

        LDA      #25
        STA      CH
        LDA      #<sScore
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      #>sScore
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        LDX      #$06
        JSR      cout_string

        INC      CH
        LDA      #VAR_SCORE
        JSR      var_get
        JSR      print_number

        LDA      #' /
        JSR      buffer_char

        LDA      #VAR_MAX_SCORE

```

```
JSR    var_get
JSR    print_number
JSR    dump_buffer_to_screen

LDA    #$FF
STA    INVFLG
PLA
STA    CV
PLA
STA    CH
JSR    VTAB
RTS
```

Defines:

print\_status\_line, used in chunk 73.  
sScore, never used.

Uses CH 203, CLREQL 203, CV 203, INVFLG 203, SCRATCH2 204, VAR\_CURR\_ROOM 206b,  
VAR\_MAX\_SCORE 206b, VAR\_SCORE 206b, VTAB 203, buffer\_char 57, cout\_string 47,  
dump\_buffer\_line 53, dump\_buffer\_to\_screen 50, print\_number 103, print\_obj\_in\_A 137,  
and var\_get 122.

### 7.1.4 Input

The `read_line` routine dumps whatever is in the output buffer to the output, then reads a line of input from the keyboard, storing it in the `BUFF_AREA` buffer. The buffer is terminated with a newline character.

The routine then checks if the transcript flag is set in the header, and if so, it dumps the buffer to the printer. The buffer is then truncated to the maximum number of characters allowed.

The routine then converts the characters to lowercase, and returns.

The A register will contain the number of characters in the buffer.

```

71  <Read line 71>≡ (207)
    read_line:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR    dump_buffer_line
        LDA    WNDTOP
        STA    CURR_LINE
        JSR    GETLN1
        INC    CURR_LINE
        LDA    #$8D                ; newline
        STA    BUFF_AREA,X
        INX                      ; X = num of chars in input
        TXA
        PHA                      ; save X
        LDY    #HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET+1
        LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        AND    #$01                ; Mask for transcript on
        BEQ    .continue
        TXA
        STA    BUFF_END
        JSR    dump_buffer_to_printer
        LDA    #$00
        STA    BUFF_END

    .continue
        PLA                      ; restore num of chars in input
        LDY    #$00                ; truncate to max num of chars
        CMP    (OPERANDO),Y
        BCC    .continue2
        LDA    (OPERANDO),Y

    .continue2:
        PHA                      ; save num of chars
        BEQ    .end
        TAX

```



```
.loop:
    LDA    BUFF_AREA,Y    ; convert A-Z to lowercase
    AND    #$7F
    CMP    #$41
    BCC    .continue3
    CMP    #$5B
    BCS    .continue3
    ORA    #$20

.continue3:
    INY
    STA    (OPERANDO),Y
    CMP    #$0D
    BEQ    .end
    DEX
    BNE    .loop

.end:
    PLA                                ; restore num of chars
    RTS
```

Defines:

**read\_line**, used in chunk 73.

Uses **BUFF\_AREA** 204, **BUFF\_END** 204, **CURR\_LINE** 204, **GETLN1** 203, **HEADER\_FLAGS2\_OFFSET** 206a,  
**OPERANDO** 204, **WNDTOP** 203, **dump\_buffer\_line** 53, and **dump\_buffer\_to\_printer** 51.

### 7.1.5 Lexical parsing

After reading a line, the Z-machine needs to parse it into words and then look up those words in the dictionary. The `sread` instruction combines `read_line` with parsing.

`sread` redisplay the status line, then reads characters from the keyboard until a newline is entered. The characters are stored in the buffer at the z-address in `OPERANDO`, and parsed into the buffer at the z-address in `OPERAND1`.

Prior to this instruction, the first byte in the text buffer must contain the maximum number of characters to accept as input, minus 1.

After the line is read, the line is split into words (separated by the separators space, period, comma, question mark, carriage return, newline, tab, or formfeed), and each word is looked up in the dictionary.

The number of words parsed is written in byte 1 of the parse buffer, and then follows the tokens.

Each token is 4 bytes. The first two bytes are the address of the word in the dictionary (or 0 if not found), followed by the length of the word, followed by the index into the buffer where the word starts.

```

73  <Instruction sread 73>≡ (207) 74a>
    instr_sread:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      print_status_line
        ADDW     OPERANDO, Z_HEADER_ADDR, OPERANDO ; text buffer
        ADDW     OPERAND1, Z_HEADER_ADDR, OPERAND1 ; parse buffer
        JSR      read_line ; SCRATCH3H = read_line() (input_count)
        STA      SCRATCH3+1
        LDA      #$00 ; SCRATCH3L = 0 (char count)
        STA      SCRATCH3
        LDY      #$01
        LDA      #$00 ; store 0 in the parse buffer + 1.
        STA      (OPERAND1),Y
        LDA      #$02
        STA      TOKEN_IDX
        LDA      #$01
        STA      INPUT_PTR

```

Defines:

`instr_sread`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `OPERANDO 204`, `OPERAND1 204`, `SCRATCH3 204`, `print_status_line 69`, and `read_line 71`.

Loop:

We check the next two bytes in the parse buffer, and if they are the same, we are done.

```
74a  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <73 74b>
      .loop_word:
          LDY    #$00          ; if parsebuf[0] == parsebuf[1] do_instruction
          LDA    (OPERAND1),Y
          INY
          CMP    (OPERAND1),Y
          BNE    .not_end1
          JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses OPERAND1 204 and do\_instruction 112.

Also, if the char count and input buffer len are zero, we are done.

```
74b  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <74a 74c>
      .not_end1:
          LDA    SCRATCH3+1    ; if input_count == char_count == 0 do_instruction
          ORA    SCRATCH3
          BNE    .not_end2
          JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses SCRATCH3 204 and do\_instruction 112.

If the char count isn't yet 6, then we need more chars.

```
74c  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <74b 75a>
      .not_end2:
          LDA    SCRATCH3      ; if char_count != 6 .not_min_compress_size
          CMP    #$06
          BNE    .not_min_compress_size
          JSR    skip_separators
```

Uses SCRATCH3 204 and skip\_separators 79.

If the char count is 0, then we can initialize the 6-byte area in ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 with zero.

```

75a  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <74c 75b>
      .not_min_compress_size:
          LDA    SCRATCH3
          BNE    .not_separator
          LDY    #$06
          LDX    #$00

      .clear:
          LDA    #$00
          STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
          INX
          DEY
          BNE    .clear

```

Uses SCRATCH3 204 and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 204.

Next we set up the token. Byte 3 in a token is the index into the text buffer where the word starts (INPUT\_PTR). We then check if the character pointed to is a dictionary separator (which needs to be treated as a word) or a standard separator (which needs to be skipped over). And if the character is a standard separator, we increment the input pointer and decrement the input count and loop back.

```

75b  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <75a 76a>
      LDA    INPUT_PTR          ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX+3] = INPUT_PTR
      LDY    TOKEN_IDX
      INY
      INY
      INY
      STA    (OPERAND1),Y
      LDY    INPUT_PTR          ; is_dict_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
      LDA    (OPERAND0),Y
      JSR    is_dict_separator
      BCS    .is_dict_separator
      LDY    INPUT_PTR          ; is_std_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
      LDA    (OPERAND0),Y
      JSR    is_std_separator
      BCC    .not_separator
      INC    INPUT_PTR          ; ++INPUT_PTR
      DEC    SCRATCH3+1         ; --input_count
      JMP    .loop_word

```

Uses OPERAND0 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH3 204, is\_dict\_separator 80, and is\_std\_separator 80.

If `char_count` is zero, we have run out of characters, so we need to search through the dictionary with whatever we've collected in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer.

We also check if the character is a separator, and if so, we again search through the dictionary with whatever we've collected in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer.

Otherwise, we can store the character in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer, increment the char count and input pointer and decrement the input count. Then loop back.

```

76a  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <75b 76b>
      .not_separator:
          LDA     SCRATCH3+1
          BEQ     .search
          LDY     INPUT_PTR          ; is_separator(textbuf[INPUT_PTR])
          LDA     (OPERANDO),Y
          JSR     is_separator
          BCS     .search
          LDY     INPUT_PTR          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH1[char_count] = textbuf[INPUT_PTR]
          LDA     (OPERANDO),Y
          LDX     SCRATCH3
          STA     ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
          DEC     SCRATCH3+1         ; --input_count
          INC     SCRATCH3           ; ++char_count
          INC     INPUT_PTR         ; ++INPUT_PTR
          JMP     .loop_word

```

Uses OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH3 204, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 204, and is\_separator 80.

If it's a dictionary separator, we store the character in the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH1` buffer, increment the char count and input pointer and decrement the input count. Then we fall through to search.

```

76b  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <76a 77>
      .is_dict_separator:
          STA     ZCHAR_SCRATCH1
          INC     SCRATCH3
          DEC     SCRATCH3+1
          INC     INPUT_PTR

```

Uses SCRATCH3 204, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 204, and is\_dict\_separator 80.

To begin, if we haven't collected any characters, then just go back and loop again.

Next, we store the number of characters in the token into the current token at byte 2. Although we will only compare the first 6 characters, we store the number of input characters in the token.

```

77  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <76b 78>
    .search:
        LDA    SCRATCH3
        BEQ    .loop_word
        LDA    SCRATCH3+1    ; Save input_count
        PHA
        LDY    TOKEN_IDX    ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX+2] = char_count
        INY
        INY
        LDA    SCRATCH3
        STA    (OPERAND1),Y

```

Uses OPERAND1 204 and SCRATCH3 204.

We then convert these characters into z-characters, which we then search through the dictionary for. We store the z-address of the found token (or zero if not found) into the token, and then loop back for the next word.

```

78  <Instruction sread 73>+≡ (207) <77
      JSR      ascii_to_zchar
      JSR      match_dictionary_word
      LDY      TOKEN_IDX          ; parsebuf[TOKEN_IDX] = entry_addr
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y
      INY
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y

      INY          ; TOKEN_IDX += 4
      INY
      INY
      STY      TOKEN_IDX

      LDY      #$01          ; ++parsebuf[1]
      LDA      (OPERAND1),Y
      CLC
      ADC      #$01
      STA      (OPERAND1),Y

      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH3+1
      LDA      #$00
      STA      SCRATCH3
      JMP      .loop_word

```

Uses OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, ascii\_to\_zchar 81,  
and match\_dictionary\_word 91.

## Separators

79  $\langle \text{Skip separators 79} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
skip_separators:
  SUBROUTINE

      LDA      SCRATCH3+1
      BNE      .not_end
      RTS

.not_end:
  LDY      INPUT_PTR
  LDA      (OPERANDO),Y
  JSR      is_separator
  BCC      .not_separator
  RTS

.not_separator:
  INC      INPUT_PTR
  DEC      SCRATCH3+1
  INC      SCRATCH3
  JMP      skip_separators
```

Defines:

skip\_separators, used in chunk 74c.

Uses OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH3 204, and is\_separator 80.



```

80  <Separator checks 80>≡ (207)
    SEPARATORS_TABLE:
        DC      #$20, #$2E, #$2C, #$3F, #$0D, #$0A, #$09, #$0C

    is_separator:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      is_dict_separator
        BCC      is_std_separator
        RTS

    is_std_separator:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDY      #$00
        LDX      #$08

    .loop:
        CMP      SEPARATORS_TABLE,Y
        BEQ      separator_found
        INY
        DEX
        BNE      .loop

    separator_not_found:
        CLC
        RTS

    separator_found:
        SEC
        RTS

    is_dict_separator:
        SUBROUTINE

        PHA
        JSR      get_dictionary_addr
        LDY      #$00
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        TAX
        PLA

    .loop:
        BEQ      separator_not_found
        INY
        CMP      (SCRATCH2),Y
        BEQ      separator_found
        DEX
        JMP      .loop

```

Defines:

SEPARATORS\_TABLE, never used.  
 is\_dict\_separator, used in chunks 75b and 76b.  
 is\_separator, used in chunks 76a and 79.  
 is\_std\_separator, used in chunk 75b.  
 separator\_found, never used.  
 separator\_not\_found, never used.  
 Uses SCRATCH2 204 and get\_dictionary\_addr 90.

## ASCII to Z-chars

The `ascii_to_zchar` routine converts the ASCII characters in the input buffer to z-characters.

We first set the `LOCKED_ALPHABET` shift to alphabet 0, and then clear the `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` buffer with 05 (pad) zchars.

81     $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar 81} \rangle \equiv$  (207) 82a>

```

ascii_to_zchar:
  SUBROUTINE

      LDA    #$00
      STA    LOCKED_ALPHABET
      LDX    #$00
      LDY    #$06

  .clear:
      LDA    #$05
      STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
      INX
      DEY
      BNE    .clear

      LDA    #$06
      STA    SCRATCH3+1      ; nchars = 6
      LDA    #$00
      STA    SCRATCH1        ; dest_index = 0
      STA    SCRATCH2        ; index = 0

```

Defines:

`ascii_to_zchar`, used in chunk 78.  
 Uses `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 204, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204,  
 and `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 204.

Next we loop over the input buffer, converting each character in ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 to a z-character. If the character is zero, we store a pad zchar.

```

82a  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <81 82b>
      .loop:
        LDX      SCRATCH2          ; c = ZCHAR_SCRATCH1[index++]
        INC      SCRATCH2
        LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
        STA      SCRATCH3
        BNE      .continue
        LDA      #$05
        JMP      .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 204.

We first check to see which alphabet the character is in. If the alphabet is the same as the alphabet we're currently locked into, then we go to .same\_alphabet because we don't need to shift the alphabet.

```

82b  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <82a 83b>
      .continue:
        LDA      SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
        PHA
        LDA      SCRATCH3          ; alphabet = get_alphabet_for_char(c)
        JSR      get_alphabet_for_char
        STA      SCRATCH1
        CMP      LOCKED_ALPHABET
        BEQ      .same_alphabet

```

Uses LOCKED\_ALPHABET 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, and get\_alphabet\_for\_char 83a.

83a  $\langle \text{Get alphabet for char 83a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

get_alphabet_for_char:
    SUBROUTINE

    CMP    #$61
    BCC    .check_upper
    CMP    #$7B
    BCS    .check_upper
    LDA    #$00
    RTS

.check_upper:
    CMP    #$41
    BCC    .check_nonletter
    CMP    #$5B
    BCS    .check_nonletter
    LDA    #$01
    RTS

.check_nonletter:
    ORA    #$00
    BEQ    .return
    BMI    .return
    LDA    #$02

.return:
    RTS

```

Defines:

get\_alphabet\_for\_char, used in chunks 82b, 83b, and 87a.

Otherwise we check the next character to see if it's in the same alphabet as the current character. If they're different, then we should shift the alphabet, not lock it.

83b  $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar 81} \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 82b \ 84a \rangle$

```

LDX    SCRATCH2
LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH1,X
JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
CMP    SCRATCH1
BNE    .shift_alphabet

```

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1 204, and get\_alphabet\_for\_char 83a.

We then determine which direction to shift lock the alphabet to, store the shifting character into `SCRATCH1+1`, and set the locked alphabet to the new alphabet.

```

84a  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <83b 84b>
      SEC                      ; shift_char = shift lock char (4 or 5)
      SBC    LOCKED_ALPHABET
      CLC
      ADC    #$03
      JSR    A_mod_3
      CLC
      ADC    #$03
      STA    SCRATCH1+1
      MOVB   SCRATCH1, LOCKED_ALPHABET ; LOCKED_ALPHABET = alphabet

```

Uses `A_mod_3` 102, `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 204, `MOVB` 11b, and `SCRATCH1` 204.

Then we store the shift lock character into the destination buffer.

```

84b  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <84a 84c>
      PLA                      ; restore dest_index
      STA    SCRATCH1
      LDA    SCRATCH1+1        ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = shift_char
      LDX    SCRATCH1
      STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
      INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 204 and `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 204.

If we've run out of room in the destination buffer, then we simply go to compress the destination buffer and return. Otherwise we will add the character to the destination buffer by going to `.same_alphabet`.

```

84c  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <84b 86>
      DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
      BNE    .add_shifted_char
      JMP    z_compress

.add_shifted_char:
      LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
      PHA
      JMP    .same_alphabet

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, and `z_compress` 85.

The `z_compress` routine takes the 6 z-characters in `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` and compresses them into 4 bytes.

```

85  <Z compress 85>≡ (207)
    z_compress:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
            ASL
            ASL
            ASL
            ASL
            ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
            ASL
            ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
            LDX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
            STX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
            ORA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
            STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
            LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+4
            ASL
            ASL
            ASL
            ASL
            ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
            ASL
            ROL      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
            LDX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
            STX      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
            ORA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+5
            STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
            LDA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
            ORA      #$80
            STA      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
            RTS

```

Defines:

`z_compress`, used in chunks 84c, 86, 87b, and 89.

Uses `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 204.

To temporarily shift the alphabet, we determine which character we need to use to shift it out of the current alphabet (`LOCKED_ALPHABET`), and put it in the destination buffer. Then, if we've run out of characters in the destination buffer, we simply go to compress the destination buffer and return.

```

86  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <84c 87a>
    .shift_alphabet:
        LDA    SCRATCH1          ; shift_char = shift char (2 or 3)
        SEC
        SBC    LOCKED_ALPHABET
        CLC
        ADC    #$03
        JSR    A_mod_3
        TAX
        INX
        PLA
        STA    SCRATCH1          ; restore dest_index
        TXA          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = shift_char
        LDX    SCRATCH1
        STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
        INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index
        DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
        BNE    .save_dest_index_and_same_alphabet

    stretchy_z_compress:
        JMP    z_compress

```

Defines:

`stretchy_z_compress`, never used.

Uses `A_mod_3` 102, `LOCKED_ALPHABET` 204, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, `ZCHAR_SCRATCH2` 204, and `z_compress` 85.

If the character to save is lowercase, we can simply subtract `#$5B` such that 'a' = 6, and so on.

87a  $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar } 81 \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 86 \ 87b \rangle$

```

.save_dest_index_and_same_alphabet:
    LDA    SCRATCH1          ; save dest_index
    PHA

.same_alphabet:
    PLA
    STA    SCRATCH1          ; restore dest_index
    LDA    SCRATCH3
    JSR    get_alphabet_for_char
    SEC
    SBC    #$01              ; alphabet_minus_1 = case(c) - 1
    BPL    .not_lowercase
    LDA    SCRATCH3
    SEC
    SBC    #$5B              ; c -= 'a'-6

```

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, and get\_alphabet\_for\_char 83a.

Then we store the character in the destination buffer, and move on to the next character, unless the destination buffer is full, in which case we compress and return.

87b  $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar } 81 \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 87a \ 87c \rangle$

```

.store_zchar:
    LDX    SCRATCH1          ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = c
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1          ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1        ; --nchars
    BEQ    .dest_full
    JMP    .loop

.dest_full:
    JMP    z_compress

```

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 204, and z\_compress 85.

If the character was upper case, then we can subtract `#$3B` such that 'A' = 6, and so on, and then store the character in the same way.

87c  $\langle \text{ASCII to Zchar } 81 \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 87b \ 88a \rangle$

```

.not_lowercase:
    BNE    .not_alphabetic
    LDA    SCRATCH3
    SEC
    SBC    #$3B              ; c -= 'A'-6
    JMP    .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH3 204.



Now if the character isn't upper or lower case, then it's a non-alphabetic character. We first search in the non-alphabetic table, and if found, we can store that character and continue.

```
88a  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <87c 89>
      .not_alphabetic:
      LDA      SCRATCH3
      JSR      search_nonalpha_table
      BNE      .store_zchar
```

Uses SCRATCH3 204 and search\_nonalpha\_table 88b.

```
88b  <Search nonalpha table 88b>≡ (207)
      search_nonalpha_table:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDX      #$24

      .loop:
      CMP      a2_table,X
      BEQ      .found
      DEX
      BPL      .loop
      LDY      #$00
      RTS

      .found:
      TXA
      CLC
      ADC      #$08
      RTS
```

Defines:

search\_nonalpha\_table, used in chunk 88a.

Uses a2\_table 67a.

If, however, the character is simply not representable in the z-characters, then we store a z-char newline (6), and, if there's still room in the destination buffer, we store the high 3 bits of the unrepresentable character and store it in the destination buffer, and, if there's still room, we take the low 5 bits and store that in the destination buffer.

This works because the newline character can never be a part of the input, so it serves here as an escaping character.

```

89  <ASCII to Zchar 81>+≡ (207) <88a
    LDA    #$06           ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = 6
    LDX    SCRATCH1
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1       ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1     ; --nchars
    BEQ    z_compress

    LDA    SCRATCH3       ; ZCHAR_SCRATCH2[dest_index] = c >> 5
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    LSR
    AND    #$03
    LDX    SCRATCH1
    STA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2,X
    INC    SCRATCH1       ; ++dest_index
    DEC    SCRATCH3+1     ; --nchars
    BEQ    z_compress

    LDA    SCRATCH3       ; c &= 0x1F
    AND    #$1F
    JMP    .store_zchar

```

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 204, and z\_compress 85.

## Searching the dictionary

The address of the dictionary is stored in the header, and the `get_dictionary_addr` routine gets the absolute address of the dictionary and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

```
90  <Get dictionary address 90>≡ (207)
    get_dictionary_addr:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDY    #HEADER_DICT_OFFSET
            LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
            STA    SCRATCH2+1
            INY
            LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
            STA    SCRATCH2
            ADDW    SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
            RTS
```

Defines:

`get_dictionary_addr`, used in chunks 80 and 91.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `HEADER_DICT_OFFSET 206a`, and `SCRATCH2 204`.

The `match_dictionary_word` routines searches for a word in the dictionary, returning in `SCRATCH1` the z-address of the matching dictionary entry, or zero if not found.

```

91  <Match dictionary word 91>≡ (207) 92a>
    match_dictionary_word:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_dictionary_addr
        LDY      #$00                ; number of dict separators
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        TAY
        INY                        ; skip past and get entry length
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        ASL
        ASL                        ; search_size = entry length x 16
        ASL
        ASL
        STA      SCRATCH3
        INY                        ; entry_index = num dict entries
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA      SCRATCH1+1
        INY
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        STA      SCRATCH1
        INY
        TYA
        ADDA     SCRATCH2            ; entry_addr = start of dictionary entries
        LDY      #$00
        JMP      .try_match

```

Defines:

`match_dictionary_word`, used in chunk 78.

Uses `ADDA 14a`, `SCRATCH1 204`, `SCRATCH2 204`, `SCRATCH3 204`, and `get_dictionary_addr 90`.

Since the dictionary is stored in lexicographic order, if we ever find a word that is greater than the word we are looking for, or we reach the end of the dictionary, then we can stop searching.

Instead of searching incrementally, we actually search in steps of 16 entries. When we've located the chunk of entries that our word should be in, we then search through the 16 entries to find the word, or fail.

92a     $\langle \text{Match dictionary word } 91 \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\triangleleft 91 \ 92b \triangleright$

```

    .loop:
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        CMP      ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
        BCS      .possible

    .try_match:
        ADDB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; entry_addr += search_size
        SEC                                ; entry_index -= 16
        LDA      SCRATCH1
        SBC      #$10
        STA      SCRATCH1
        BCS      .loop
        DEC      SCRATCH1+1
        BPL      .loop

```

Uses ADDB2 15b, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, and ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 204.

92b     $\langle \text{Match dictionary word } 91 \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\triangleleft 92a \ 93 \triangleright$

```

    .possible:
        SUBB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; entry_addr -= search_size
        ADDB2    SCRATCH1, #$10          ; entry_index += 16
        LDA      SCRATCH3                ; search_size /= 16
        LSR
        LSR
        LSR
        LSR
        STA      SCRATCH3

```

Uses ADDB2 15b, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, and SUBB2 17a.

Now we compare the word. The words in the dictionary are numerically big-endian while the words in the ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2 buffer are numerically little-endian, which explains the unusual order of the comparisons.

Since we know that the dictionary word must be in this chunk of 16 words if it exists, then if our word is less than the dictionary word, we can stop searching and declare failure.

```

93  <Match dictionary word 91>+≡ (207) <92b 94a>
    .inner_loop:
        LDY    #$00
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+1
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        INY
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        LDY    #$02
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+3
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BNE    .inner_next

        INY
        LDA    ZCHAR_SCRATCH2+2
        CMP    (SCRATCH2),Y
        BCC    .not_found
        BEQ    .found

    .inner_next:
        ADB2    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3    ; entry_addr += search_size
        SUBB    SCRATCH1, #$01        ; --entry_index
        LDA    SCRATCH1
        ORA    SCRATCH1+1
        BNE    .inner_loop

Uses ADB2 15b, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, SUBB 16b,
and ZCHAR_SCRATCH2 204.

```

If the search failed, we return 0 in SCRATCH1.

```
94a  <Match dictionary word 91>+≡ (207) <93 94b>
      .not_found:
          LDA    #$00
          STA    SCRATCH1+1
          STA    SCRATCH1
          RTS
```

Uses SCRATCH1 204.

Otherwise, return the z-address (i.e. the absolute address minus the header address) of the dictionary entry.

```
94b  <Match dictionary word 91>+≡ (207) <94a>
      .found:
          SUBW    SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH1
          RTS
```

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, and SUBW 17b.

## Chapter 8

# Arithmetic routines

### 8.0.1 Negation and sign manipulation

`negate` negates the word in `SCRATCH2`.

95a     $\langle \textit{negate } 95a \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
negate:
    SUBROUTINE

    SUBW    #$0000, SCRATCH2, SCRATCH2
    RTS
```

Defines:

`negate`, used in chunks 95b, 96b, and 104.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204 and `SUBW` 17b.

`flip_sign` negates the word in `SCRATCH2` if the sign bit in the `A` register is set, i.e. if signed `A` is negative. We also keep track of the number of flips in `SIGN_BIT`.

95b     $\langle \textit{Flip sign } 95b \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
flip_sign:
    SUBROUTINE

    ORA     #$00
    BMI     .do_negate
    RTS

.do_negate:
    INC     SIGN_BIT
    JMP     negate
```

Defines:

`flip_sign`, used in chunk 96a.

Uses `negate` 95a.



`check_sign` sets the sign bit of `SCRATCH2` to support a 16-bit signed multiply, divide, or modulus operation on `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`. That is, if the sign bits are the same, `SCRATCH2` retains its sign bit, otherwise its sign bit is flipped.

The `SIGN_BIT` value also contains the number of negative sign bits in `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`, so 0, 1, or 2.

96a  $\langle \textit{Check sign 96a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

check_sign:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    #$00
    STA    SIGN_BIT
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    JSR    flip_sign
    LDA    SCRATCH1+1
    JSR    flip_sign
    RTS

```

Defines:

`check_sign`, used in chunks 171–73.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, and `flip_sign` 95b.

`set_sign` checks the number of negatives counted up in `SIGN_BIT` and sets the sign bit of `SCRATCH2` accordingly. That is, odd numbers of negative signs will flip the sign bit of `SCRATCH2`.

96b  $\langle \textit{Set sign 96b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

set_sign:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    SIGN_BIT
    AND    #$01
    BNE    negate
    RTS

```

Defines:

`set_sign`, used in chunk 173.

Uses `negate` 95a.

## 8.0.2 16-bit multiplication

`mulu16` multiplies the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1` by the unsigned word in `SCRATCH2`, storing the result in `SCRATCH1`.

Note that this routine only handles unsigned multiplication. Taking care of signs is part of `instr_mul`, which uses this routine and the sign manipulation routines.

```

97  <mulu16 97>≡ (207)
    mulu16:
        SUBROUTINE

        PSHW    SCRATCH3
        STOW    #$0000, SCRATCH3
        LDX     #$10

    .loop:
        LDA     SCRATCH1
        CLC
        AND     #$01
        BEQ     .next_bit
        ADDWC   SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3, SCRATCH3

    .next_bit:
        RORW    SCRATCH3
        RORW    SCRATCH1
        DEX
        BNE     .loop

        MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
        MOVW    SCRATCH3, SCRATCH1
        PULW    SCRATCH3
        RTS

```

Defines:

`mulu16`, used in chunk 173.

Uses `ADDWC` 16a, `MOVW` 12a, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `RORW` 18, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, and `STOW` 10.

### 8.0.3 16-bit division

`divu16` divides the unsigned word in `SCRATCH2` (the dividend) by the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1` (the divisor), storing the quotient in `SCRATCH2` and the remainder in `SCRATCH1`.

Under this routine, the result of division by zero is a quotient of  $2^{16} - 1$ , while the remainder depends on the high bit of the dividend. If the dividend's high bit is 0, the remainder is the dividend. If the dividend's high bit is 1, the remainder is the dividend with the high bit set to 0.

Note that this routine only handles unsigned division. Taking care of signs is part of `instr_div`, which uses this routine and the sign manipulation routines.

The idea behind this routine is to do long division. We bring the dividend into a scratch space one bit at a time (starting with the most significant bit) and see if the divisor fits into it. If it does, we can record a 1 in the quotient, and subtract the divisor from the scratch space. If it doesn't, we record a 0 in the quotient. We do this for all 16 bits in the dividend. Whatever remains in the scratch space is the remainder.

For example, suppose we want to divide decimal `SCRATCH2 = 37 = 0b10101` by `SCRATCH1 = 10 = 0b1010`. This is something the `print_number` routine might do.

The routine starts with storing `SCRATCH2` to `SCRATCH3 = 37 = 0b100101` and then setting `SCRATCH2` to zero. This is our scratch space, and will ultimately become the remainder.

Interestingly here, we don't start with shifting the dividend. Instead we do the subtraction first. There's no harm in this, since we are guaranteed that the subtraction will fail (be negative) on the first iteration, so we shift in a zero.

It should be clear that as we shift the dividend into the scratch space, eventually the scratch space will contain `0b10010`, and the subtraction will succeed. We then shift in a 1 into the quotient, and subtract the divisor `0b1010` from the scratch space `0b10010`, leaving `0b1000`. There is now only one bit left in the dividend (1).

We shift that into the scratch space, which is now `0b10001`, and the subtraction will succeed again. We shift in a 1 into the quotient, and subtract the divisor from the scratch space, leaving `0b111`. There are no bits left in the dividend, so we are done. The quotient is `0b11 = 3` and the scratch space is `0b111 = 7`, which is the remainder as expected.

Because the algorithm always does the shift, it will also shift the remainder one time too many, which is why the last step is to shift it right and store the result.

Here's a trace of the algorithm:

```

99  <trace of divu16 99>≡
    Begin, x=17: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000000000100101
    Loop,  x=16: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=00000000001001010
    Loop,  x=15: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=000000000010010100
    Loop,  x=14: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000000010010101000
    Loop,  x=13: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000000100101010000
    Loop,  x=12: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000001001010100000
    Loop,  x=11: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0000010010101000000
    Loop,  x=10: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0001001010100000000
    Loop,  x=09: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0010010101000000000
    Loop,  x=08: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=0100101010000000000
    Loop,  x=07: s1=0000000000001010, s2=0000000000000000, s3=1001010100000000000
    Loop,  x=06: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000000001, s3=0010101000000000000
    Loop,  x=05: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000000010, s3=0101000000000000000
    Loop,  x=04: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000000100, s3=1010000000000000000
    Loop,  x=03: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000001001, s3=0100000000000000000
    Loop,  x=02: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000010010, s3=1000000000000000000
    Loop,  x=01: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000010001, s3=0000000000000000001
    Loop,  x=00: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000001110, s3=0000000000000000011
    End,    x=00: s1=0000000000001010, s2=00000000000001110, s3=0000000000000000011
    After adjustment shift and remainder storage:
    End,    x=00: s1=0000000000000111, s2=0000000000000011

```

Notice that `SCRATCH3` is used for both the dividend and the quotient. As we shift bits out of the left of the dividend and into the scratch space `SCRATCH2`, we also shift bits into the right as the quotient. After going through 16 bits, the dividend is all out and the quotient is all in.

100  $\langle \text{divu16 } 100 \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
divu16:
    SUBROUTINE

    PSHW    SCRATCH3
    MOVW    SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3 ; SCRATCH3 is the dividend
    STOW    #$0000, SCRATCH2 ; SCRATCH2 is the remainder
    LDX     #$11

.loop:
    SEC                                ; carry = "not borrow"
    LDA     SCRATCH2                   ; Remainder minus divisor (low byte)
    SBC     SCRATCH1
    TAY
    LDA     SCRATCH2+1
    SBC     SCRATCH1+1
    BCC     .skip                      ; Divisor did not fit

    ; At this point carry is set, which will affect
    ; the ROLs below.

    STA     SCRATCH2+1                ; Save remainder
    TYA
    STA     SCRATCH2

.skip:
    ROLW    SCRATCH3                  ; Shift carry into divisor/quotient left
    ROLW    SCRATCH2                  ; Shift divisor/remainder left
    DEX
    BNE     .loop                     ; loop end

    CLC                                ; SCRATCH1 = SCRATCH2 >> 1
    LDA     SCRATCH2+1
    ROR
    STA     SCRATCH1+1
    LDA     SCRATCH2
    ROR
    STA     SCRATCH1                  ; remainder
    MOVW    SCRATCH3, SCRATCH2 ; quotient
    PULW    SCRATCH3
    RTS
```

Defines:

`divu16`, used in chunks 103, 171, 172, and 174a.

Uses `MOVW` 12a, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `ROLW` 17c, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, and `STOW` 10.

### 8.0.4 16-bit comparison

`cmpu16` compares the unsigned words in `SCRATCH2` to the unsigned word in `SCRATCH1`. For example, if, as an unsigned comparison, `SCRATCH2 < SCRATCH1`, then `BCC` will detect this condition.

**101a**     $\langle \text{cmpu16 } \textbf{101a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

cmpu16:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA      SCRATCH2+1
        CMP      SCRATCH1+1
        BNE      .end
        LDA      SCRATCH2
        CMP      SCRATCH1
    .end:
        RTS

```

Defines:

`cmpu16`, used in chunks **101b** and **181a**.

Uses `SCRATCH1` **204** and `SCRATCH2` **204**.

`cmp16` compares the two signed words in `SCRATCH1` and `SCRATCH2`.

**101b**     $\langle \text{cmp16 } \textbf{101b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

cmp16:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA      SCRATCH1+1
        EOR      SCRATCH2+1
        BPL      cmpu16
        LDA      SCRATCH1+1
        CMP      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`cmp16`, used in chunks **177a**, **179a**, and **180a**.

Uses `SCRATCH1` **204**, `SCRATCH2` **204**, and `cmpu16` **101a**.

### 8.0.5 Other routines

`A_mod_3` is a routine that calculates the modulus of the `A` register with 3, by repeatedly subtracting 3 until the result is less than 3. ¶3 It is used in the Z-machine to calculate the alphabet shift.

102  $\langle A \bmod 3 \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

A_mod_3:
    CMP    #$03
    BCC    .end
    SEC
    SBC    #$03
    JMP    A_mod_3

```

```

.end:
    RTS

```

Defines:

`A_mod_3`, used in chunks 64, 84a, and 86.

## 8.0.6 Printing numbers

The `print_number` routine prints the signed number in `SCRATCH2` as decimal to the output buffer.

103    *<Print number 103>*≡ (207)

```

print_number:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    BPL    .print_positive
    JSR    print_negative_num

.print_positive:
    STOB    #$00, SCRATCH3

.loop:
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    ORA    SCRATCH2
    BEQ    .is_zero
    STOW    #$000A, SCRATCH1
    JSR    divu16
    LDA    SCRATCH1
    PHA
    INC    SCRATCH3
    JMP    .loop

.is_zero:
    LDA    SCRATCH3
    BEQ    .print_0

.print_digit:
    PLA
    CLC
    ADC    #$30          ; '0'
    JSR    buffer_char
    DEC    SCRATCH3
    BNE    .print_digit
    RTS

.print_0:
    LDA    #$30          ; '0'
    JMP    buffer_char

```

Defines:

`print_number`, used in chunks 69 and 186a.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, `STOB` 11b, `STOW` 10, `buffer_char` 57, `divu16` 100, and `print_negative_num` 104.



The `print_negative_num` routine is a utility used by `print_num`, just to print the negative sign and negate the number before printing the rest.

```
104  ⟨Print negative number 104⟩≡ (207)
      print_negative_num:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDA    $$2D          ; '-'
      JSR    buffer_char
      JMP    negate
```

Defines:

`print_negative_num`, used in chunk 103.

Uses `buffer_char` 57 and `negate` 95a.

## Chapter 9

# Disk routines

```
105  <iob struct 105>≡ (207)
      iob:
          DC      #$01          ; table_type (must be 1)
      iob.slot_times_16:
          DC      #$60          ; slot_times_16
      iob.drive:
          DC      #$01          ; drive_number
          DC      #$00          ; volume
      iob.track:
          DC      #$00          ; track
      iob.sector:
          DC      #$00          ; sector
          DC.W    #dct          ; dct_addr
      iob.buffer:
          DC.W    #$0000        ; buffer_addr
          DC      #$00          ; unused
          DC      #$00          ; partial_byte_count
      iob.command:
          DC      #$00          ; command
          DC      #$00          ; ret_code
          DC      #$00          ; last_volume
          DC      #$60          ; last_slot_times_16
          DC      #$00          ; last_drive_number

      dct:
          DC      #$00          ; device_type (0 for DISK II)
          DC      #$01          ; phases_per_track (1 for DISK II)
      dct.motor_count:
          DC.W    #$EFD8        ; motor_on_time_count ($EFD8 for DISK II)
```

Defines:

dct, used in chunk 108.

iob, used in chunks 106, 146, and 148.

```

iob.buffer, never used.
iob.command, never used.
iob.drive, never used.
iob.sector, never used.
iob.slot.times.16, never used.
iob.track, never used.

```

The `do_rwts_on_sector` can read or write a sector using the RWTS routine in DOS. `SCRATCH1` contains the sector number relative to track 3 sector 0 (and can be  $\geq 16$ ), and `SCRATCH2` contains the buffer to read into or write from.

The A register contains the command: 1 for read, and 2 for write.

```

106  <Do RWTS on sector 106>≡ (207)
      do_rwts_on_sector:
          SUBROUTINE

              STA      iob.command
              LDA      SCRATCH2
              STA      iob.buffer
              LDA      SCRATCH2+1
              STA      iob.buffer+1
              LDA      #$03
              STA      iob.track
              LDA      SCRATCH1
              LDX      SCRATCH1+1
              SEC

      .adjust_track:
          SBC      SECTORS_PER_TRACK
          BCS      .inc_track
          DEX
          BMI      .do_read
          SEC

      .inc_track:
          INC      iob.track
          JMP      .adjust_track

      .do_read:
          CLC
          ADC      SECTORS_PER_TRACK
          STA      iob.sector
          LDA      #$1D
          LDY      #$AC
          JSR      RWTS
          RTS

```

Defines:

`do_rwts_on_sector`, used in chunks 107 and 108.

Uses RWTS 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SECTORS\_PER\_TRACK 204, and iob 105.

The `read_from_sector` routine reads the sector number in `SCRATCH1` from the disk into the buffer in `SCRATCH2`. Other entry points are `read_next_sector`, which sets the buffer to `BUFF_AREA`, increments `SCRATCH1` and then reads, and `inc_sector_and_read`, which does the same but assumes the buffer has already been set in `SCRATCH2`.

107    *<Reading sectors 107>*≡ (207)

```

read_next_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    STOW    #BUFF_AREA, SCRATCH2

inc_sector_and_read:
    SUBROUTINE

    INCW    SCRATCH1

read_from_sector:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     #$01
    JSR     do_rwts_on_sector
    RTS

```

Defines:

`inc_sector_and_read`, used in chunk 154b.  
`read_from_sector`, used in chunks 29b, 30, 40, and 43.  
`read_next_sector`, used in chunks 152c and 154a.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204, `INCW` 13b, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, and `do_rwts_on_sector` 106.

For some reason, possibly a bug, possibly an ill-informed optimization, the `write_next_sector` routine temporarily stores `#$D8EF` into the disk motor on-time count, where normally this is `#$EFD8`. There doesn't seem to be any reason for this, since the motor count is never set to anything else.

```

108  <Writing sectors 108>≡ (207)
      write_next_sector:
          SUBROUTINE

          STOW      #BUFF_AREA, SCRATCH2

      inc_sector_and_write:
          SUBROUTINE

          INCW      SCRATCH1

      .write_next_sector:
          LDA        dct.motor_count
          PHA
          LDA        dct.motor_count+1
          PHA
          STOW2      #$D8EF, dct.motor_count
          LDA        #$02
          JSR        do_rwts_on_sector
          PLA
          STA        dct.motor_count+1
          PLA
          STA        dct.motor_count
          RTS

```

Defines:

`inc_sector_and_write`, used in chunk 151b.  
`write_next_sector`, used in chunks 150b and 151a.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204, `INCW` 13b, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, `STOW2` 11a, `dct` 105,  
and `do_rwts_on_sector` 106.

## Chapter 10

# The instruction dispatcher

### 10.1 Executing an instruction

The addresses for instructions handlers are stored in tables, organized by number of operands:

```
109  <Instruction tables 109>≡ (207)
      routines_table_0op:
          WORD    instr_rtrue
          WORD    instr_rfalse
          WORD    instr_print
          WORD    instr_print_ret
          WORD    instr_nop
          WORD    instr_save
          WORD    instr_restore
          WORD    instr_restart
          WORD    instr_ret_popped
          WORD    instr_pop
          WORD    instr_quit
          WORD    instr_new_line

      routines_table_1op:
          WORD    instr_jz
          WORD    instr_get_sibling
          WORD    instr_get_child
          WORD    instr_get_parent
          WORD    instr_get_prop_len
          WORD    instr_inc
          WORD    instr_dec
          WORD    instr_print_addr
          WORD    illegal_opcode
```

```
WORD    instr_remove_obj
WORD    instr_print_obj
WORD    instr_ret
WORD    instr_jump
WORD    instr_print_paddr
WORD    instr_load
WORD    instr_not

routines_table_2op:
WORD    illegal_opcode
WORD    instr_je
WORD    instr_jl
WORD    instr_jg
WORD    instr_dec_chk
WORD    instr_inc_chk
WORD    instr_jin
WORD    instr_test
WORD    instr_or
WORD    instr_and
WORD    instr_test_attr
WORD    instr_set_attr
WORD    instr_clear_attr
WORD    instr_store
WORD    instr_insert_obj
WORD    instr_loadw
WORD    instr_loadb
WORD    instr_get_prop
WORD    instr_get_prop_addr
WORD    instr_get_next_prop
WORD    instr_add
WORD    instr_sub
WORD    instr_mul
WORD    instr_div
WORD    instr_mod

routines_table_var:
WORD    instr_call
WORD    instr_storew
WORD    instr_storeb
WORD    instr_put_prop
WORD    instr_sread
WORD    instr_print_char
WORD    instr_print_num
WORD    instr_random
WORD    instr_push
WORD    instr_pull
```

Defines:

```
routines_table_0op, used in chunk 113b.
routines_table_1op, used in chunk 115b.
routines_table_2op, used in chunk 117c.
```

routines\_table\_var, used in chunk 119.  
 Uses illegal\_opcode 158, instr\_add 170b, instr\_and 175a, instr\_call 125,  
 instr\_clear\_attr 187, instr\_dec 170a, instr\_dec\_chk 176b, instr\_div 171,  
 instr\_get\_next\_prop 189, instr\_get\_parent 190, instr\_get\_prop 191,  
 instr\_get\_prop\_addr 194, instr\_get\_prop\_len 195, instr\_get\_sibling 196,  
 instr\_inc 169c, instr\_inc\_chk 177a, instr\_insert\_obj 197, instr\_je 177b,  
 instr\_jg 179a, instr\_jin 179b, instr\_jl 180a, instr\_jump 182a, instr\_jz 180b,  
 instr\_load 165a, instr\_loadb 166a, instr\_loadw 165b, instr\_mod 172, instr\_mul 173,  
 instr\_new\_line 184b, instr\_nop 200a, instr\_not 175b, instr\_or 176a, instr\_pop 168b,  
 instr\_print 185a, instr\_print\_addr 185b, instr\_print\_char 185c, instr\_print\_num 186a,  
 instr\_print\_obj 186b, instr\_print\_paddr 186c, instr\_print\_ret 182b, instr\_pull 169a,  
 instr\_push 169b, instr\_put\_prop 198, instr\_quit 201, instr\_random 174a,  
 instr\_remove\_obj 199a, instr\_restart 200b, instr\_restore 152b, instr\_ret 129,  
 instr\_ret\_popped 183a, instr\_rfalse 183b, instr\_rtrue 184a, instr\_save 149a,  
 instr\_set\_attr 199b, instr\_sread 73, instr\_store 166b, instr\_storeb 168a,  
 instr\_storew 167, instr\_sub 174c, instr\_test 181a, and instr\_test\_attr 181b.

Instructions from this table get executed with all operands loaded in OPERANDO-OPERAND3,  
 the address of the routine table to use in SCRATCH2, and the index into the table  
 stored in the A register. Then we can execute the instruction. This involves  
 looking up the routine address, storing it in SCRATCH1, and jumping to it.

All instructions must, when they are complete, jump back to do\_instruction.

111     $\langle \text{Execute instruction 111} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
       .opcode\_table\_jump:  
           ASL  
           TAY  
           LDA       (SCRATCH2),Y  
           STA       SCRATCH1  
           INY  
           LDA       (SCRATCH2),Y  
           STA       SCRATCH1+1  
           JSR       DEBUG\_JUMP  
           JMP       (SCRATCH1)

Defines:

.opcode\_table\_jump, never used.

Uses DEBUG\_JUMP 204, SCRATCH1 204, and SCRATCH2 204.



The call to `debug` is just a return, but I suspect that it was used during development to provide a place to put a debugging hook, for example, to print out the state of the Z-machine on every instruction.

## 10.2 Retrieving the instruction

We execute the instruction at the current program counter by first retrieving its opcode. `get_next_code_byte` retrieves the code byte at `Z_PC`, placing it in `A`, and then increments `Z_PC`.

112

<Do instruction 112>≡(207) 113a>

do\_instruction:

SUBROUTINE

MOVWZ\_PC, TMP\_Z\_PC; Save PC for debugging

LDAZ\_PC+2

STATMP\_Z\_PC+2

STOB#\$00, OPERAND\_COUNT

JSRget\_next\_code\_byte

STACURR\_OPCODE

Defines:  
do\_instruction, used in chunks 33b, 74, 128b, 159, 161b, 164, 166–70, 184–87, and 197–200.  
Uses CURR\_OPCODE 204, MOVW 12a, OPERAND\_COUNT 204, STOB 11b, TMP\_Z\_PC 204, Z\_PC 204, and get\_next\_code\_byte 37.

Byte range	Type
0x00-0x7F	2op
0x80-0xAF	1op
0xB0-0xBF	0op
0xC0-0xFF	needs next byte to determine

## 10.3 Decoding the instruction

Next, we determine how many operands to read. Note that for instructions that store a value, the storage location is not part of the operands; it comes after the operands, and is determined by the individual instruction's routine.

```

113a  <Do instruction 112>+≡ (207) <112
      CMP    $$80          ; is 2op?
      BCS    .is_gte_80
      JMP    .do_2op

      .is_gte_80:
      CMP    $$B0          ; is 1op?
      BCS    .is_gte_B0
      JMP    .do_1op

      .is_gte_B0:
      CMP    $$C0          ; is 0op?
      BCC    .do_0op
      JSR    get_next_code_byte

      ; Falls through to varop handling.

      <Handle varop instructions 118>
Uses get_next_code_byte 37.

```

### 10.3.1 0op instructions

Handling a 0op-type instruction is easy enough. We check for the legal opcode range (`$$B0-$$BB`), otherwise it's an illegal instruction. Then we load the address of the 0op instruction table into `SCRATCH2`, leaving the `A` register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

```

113b  <Handle 0op instructions 113b>≡ (207)
      .do_0op:
      SEC
      SBC    $$B0
      CMP    $$0C
      BCC    .load_opcode_table
      JMP    illegal_opcode

      .load_opcode_table:
      PHA
      STOW   routines_table_0op, SCRATCH2
      PLA
      JMP    .opcode_table_jump
Uses SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, illegal_opcode 158, and routines_table_0op 109.

```

### 10.3.2 1op instructions

Handling a 1op-type instruction (opcodes #80-#AF) is a little more complicated. Since only opcodes #X8 are illegal, this is handled in the 1op routine table.

Opcodes #80-#8F take a 16-bit operand.

```
114a  <Handle 1op instructions 114a>≡ (207) 114b>
      .do_1op:
          AND    $$30
          BNE    .is_90_to_AF
          JSR    get_const_word ; Get operand for opcodes 80-8F
          JMP    .1op_arg_loaded
      Uses get_const_word 120b.
```

Opcodes #90-#9F take an 8-bit operand zero-extended to 16 bits.

```
114b  <Handle 1op instructions 114a>+≡ (207) <114a 114c>
      .is_90_to_AF:
          CMP    $$10
          BNE    .is_A0_to_AF
          JSR    get_const_byte ; Get operand for opcodes 90-9F
          JMP    .1op_arg_loaded
      Uses get_const_byte 120a.
```

Opcodes #A0-#AF take a variable number operand, whose content is 16 bits.

```
114c  <Handle 1op instructions 114a>+≡ (207) <114b 114d>
      .is_A0_to_AF:
          JSR    get_var_content ; Get operand for opcodes A0-AF
      Uses get_var_content 121.
```

The resulting 16-bit operand is placed in OPERANDO, and OPERAND\_COUNT is set to 1.

```
114d  <Handle 1op instructions 114a>+≡ (207) <114c 115a>
      .1op_arg_loaded:
          STOB    $$01, OPERAND_COUNT
          MOVW    SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
      Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND_COUNT 204, SCRATCH2 204, and STOB 11b.
```

Then we check for illegal instructions, which in this case never happens. This could have been left over from a previous version of the z-machine where the range of legal 1op instructions was different.

```
115a  <Handle 1op instructions 114a>+≡ (207) <114d 115b>
      LDA      CURR_OPCODE
      AND      #$0F
      CMP      #$10
      BCC      .go_to_1op
      JMP      illegal_opcode
Uses CURR_OPCODE 204 and illegal_opcode 158.
```

Then we load the 1op instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

```
115b  <Handle 1op instructions 114a>+≡ (207) <115a>
      .go_to_1op:
      PHA
      STOW     routines_table_1op, SCRATCH2
      PLA
      JMP      .opcode_table_jump
Uses SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, and routines_table_1op 109.
```

### 10.3.3 2op instructions

Handling a 2op-type instruction (opcodes #00-#7F) is a little more complicated than 1op instructions.

The operands are determined by bits 6 and 5, while bits 4 through 0 determine the instruction.

The first operand is determined by bit 6. Opcodes with bit 6 clear are followed by a single byte to be zero-extended into a 16-bit operand, while opcodes with bit 6 set are followed by a single byte representing a variable number. This operand is stored in OPERANDO.

```
116a  <Handle 2op instructions 116a>≡ (207) 116b>
      .do_2op:
          AND      #$40
          BNE      .first_arg_is_var
          JSR      get_const_byte
          JMP      .get_next_arg

      .first_arg_is_var:
          JSR      get_var_content

      .get_next_arg:
          MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
```

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_const\_byte 120a, and get\_var\_content 121.

The second operand is determined by bit 5. Opcodes with bit 5 clear are followed by a single byte to be zero-extended into a 16-bit operand, while opcodes with bit 5 set are followed by a single byte representing a variable number. This operand is stored in OPERAND1.

```
116b  <Handle 2op instructions 116a>+≡ (207) <116a 117a>
      LDA      CURR_OPCODE
      AND      #$20
      BNE      .second_arg_is_var
      JSR      get_const_byte
      JMP      .store_second_arg

      .second_arg_is_var:
          JSR      get_var_content

      .store_second_arg:
          MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERAND1
```

Uses CURR\_OPCODE 204, MOVW 12a, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_const\_byte 120a, and get\_var\_content 121.

OPERAND\_COUNT is set to 2.

117a  $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 116a} \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 116b \ 117b \rangle$   
       STOB       #\$02, OPERAND\_COUNT  
 Uses OPERAND\_COUNT 204 and STOB 11b.

Then we check for illegal instructions, which are those with the low 5 bits in the range #19-#1F.

117b  $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 116a} \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 117a \ 117c \rangle$   
       LDA        CURR\_OPCODE  
  
       .check\_for\_good\_2op:  
           AND     #\$1F  
           CMP     #\$19  
           BCC     .go\_to\_op2  
           JMP     illegal\_opcode  
 Defines:  
       .check\_for\_good\_2op, never used.  
 Uses CURR\_OPCODE 204 and illegal\_opcode 158.

Then we load the 2op instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute.

117c  $\langle \text{Handle 2op instructions 116a} \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 117b \rangle$   
       .go\_to\_op2:  
           PHA  
           STOW     routines\_table\_2op, SCRATCH2  
           PLA  
           JMP     .opcode\_table\_jump  
 Uses SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, and routines\_table\_2op 109.

Bits	Type	Bytes in operand
00	Large constant (0x0000-0xFFFF)	2
01	Small constant (0x00-0xFF)	1
10	Variable address	1
11	None (ends operand list)	0

### 10.3.4 varop instructions

Handling a varop-type instruction (opcodes # $\$C0$ –# $\$FF$ ) is the most complicated. Interestingly, opcodes # $\$C0$ –# $\$DF$  map to 2op instructions (in their lower 5 bits).

The next byte is a map that determines the next operands. We look at two consecutive bits, starting from the most significant. The operand types are encoded as follows:

The values of the operands are stored consecutively starting in location OPERANDO.

```

118  <Handle varop instructions 118>≡ (113a) 119>
      LDX      #$00                ; operand number

      .get_next_operand:
      PHA                        ; save operand map
      TAY
      TXA
      PHA                        ; save operand number
      TYA
      AND      #$C0              ; check top 2 bits
      BNE      .is_01_10_11
      JSR      get_const_word    ; handle 00
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_01_10_11:
      CMP      #$80
      BNE      .is_01_11
      JSR      get_var_content   ; handle 10
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_01_11:
      CMP      #$40
      BNE      .is_11
      JSR      get_const_byte    ; handle 01
      JMP      .store_operand

      .is_11:
      PLA
      PLA

```

```

        JMP      .handle_varoperand_opcode ; handle 11 (ends operand list)

.store_operand:
    PLA
    TAX
    LDA      SCRATCH2
    STA      OPERANDO,X
    LDA      SCRATCH2+1
    STA      OPERANDO,X
    INX
    INX
    INC      OPERAND_COUNT
    PLA
                                ; shift operand map left 2 bits
    SEC
    ROL
    SEC
    ROL
    JMP      .get_next_operand

```

Uses OPERANDO 204, OPERAND\_COUNT 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_const\_byte 120a, get\_const\_word 120b, and get\_var\_content 121.

Then we load the varop instruction table into SCRATCH2, leaving the A register with the offset into the table of the instruction to execute. However, we also check for illegal opcodes. Since opcodes #\$C0-#\$DF map to 2op instructions in their lower 5 bits, we simply hook into the 2op routine to do the opcode check and table jump.

Opcodes #\$EA-#\$FF are illegal.

```

119  <Handle varop instructions 118>+≡ (113a) <118
    .handle_varoperand_opcode:
        STOW     routines_table_var, SCRATCH2
        LDA      CURR_OPCODE
        CMP      #$E0
        BCS      .is_vararg_instr
        JMP      .check_for_good_2op

    .is_vararg_instr:
        SBC      #$E0                ; Allow only E0-E9.
        CMP      #$0A
        BCC      .opcode_table_jump
        JMP      illegal_opcode

```

Uses CURR\_OPCODE 204, SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, illegal\_opcode 158, and routines\_table\_var 109.



## 10.4 Getting the instruction operands

The utility routine `get_const_byte` gets the next byte of Z-code and stores it as a zero-extended 16-bit word in `SCRATCH2`.

120a     $\langle \textit{Get const byte 120a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    get_const_byte:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      #$00
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_const_byte`, used in chunks 114b, 116, and 118.  
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 204 and `get_next_code_byte` 37.

The utility routine `get_const_word` gets the next two bytes of Z-code and stores them as a 16-bit word in `SCRATCH2`. The word is stored big-endian in Z-code. The code in the routine is a little inefficient, since it uses the stack to shuffle bytes around, rather than storing the bytes directly in the right order.

120b     $\langle \textit{Get const word 120b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    get_const_word:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        PHA
        JSR      get_next_code_byte
        STA      SCRATCH2
        PLA
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        RTS

```

Defines:

`get_const_word`, used in chunks 114a and 118.  
 Uses `SCRATCH2` 204 and `get_next_code_byte` 37.

The utility routine `get_var_content` gets the next byte of Z-code and interprets it as a Z-variable address, then retrieves the variable's 16-bit value and stores it in `SCRATCH2`.

Variable 00 always means the top of the Z-stack, and this will also pop the stack.

Variables 01-0F are “locals”, and stored as 2-byte big-endian numbers in the zero-page at `$9A-$B9` (the `LOCAL_ZVARS` area).

Variables 10-FF are “globals”, and are stored as 2-byte big-endian numbers in a location stored at `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR`.

```

121  <Get var content 121>≡ (207)
      get_var_content:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_next_code_byte      ; A = get_next_code_byte<Z_PC>
      ORA      #$00                    ; if (!A) get_top_of_stack
      BEQ      get_top_of_stack

      get_nonstack_var:
      SUBROUTINE

      CMP      #$10                    ; if (A < #$10) {
      BCS      .compute_global_var_index
      SEC
      SBC      #$01                    ;   SCRATCH2 = LOCAL_ZVARS[A - 1]
      ASL
      TAX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      INX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2
      RTS
                                     ;   return
                                     ; }

      .compute_global_var_index:
      SEC
      SBC      #$10                    ; var_ptr = 2 * (A - #$10)
      ASL
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      #$00
      ROL
      STA      SCRATCH1+1

      .get_global_var_addr:
      CLC
      LDA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR      ; var_ptr += GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR

```

```

        ADC      SCRATCH1
        STA      SCRATCH1
        LDA      GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1
        ADC      SCRATCH1+1
        STA      SCRATCH1+1

.get_global_var_value:
        LDY      #$00                      ; SCRATCH2 = *var_ptr
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        INY
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        RTS                      ; return

.get_top_of_stack:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop                      ; SCRATCH2 = pop()
        RTS                      ; return

```

Defines:

`get_nonstack_var`, used in chunk 122.

`get_top_of_stack`, never used.

`get_var_content`, used in chunks 114c, 116, and 118.

Uses `GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR` 204, `LOCAL_ZVARS` 204, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `Z_PC` 204,

`get_next_code_byte` 37, and `pop` 36.

There's another utility routine `var_get` which does the same thing, except the variable address is already stored in the A register.

```

122  <Get var content in A 122>≡ (207)
      var_get:
      SUBROUTINE

      ORA      #$00
      BEQ      pop_push
      JMP      get_nonstack_var

```

Defines:

`var_get`, used in chunks 69, 160, and 165a.

Uses `get_nonstack_var` 121 and `pop_push` 124.

The routine `store_var` stores `SCRATCH2` into the variable in the next code byte, while `store_var2` stores `SCRATCH2` into the variable in the `A` register. Since variable 0 is the stack, storing into variable 0 is equivalent to pushing onto the stack.

```

123  <Store var 123>≡ (207)
      store_var:
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA    SCRATCH2          ; A = get_next_code_byte()
              PHA
              LDA    SCRATCH2+1
              PHA
              JSR    get_next_code_byte
              TAX
              PLA
              STA    SCRATCH2+1
              PLA
              STA    SCRATCH2
              TXA

store_var2:
    SUBROUTINE

        ORA    #$00
        BNE    .nonstack
        JMP    push

.nonstack:
    CMP    #$10
    BCS    .global_var
    SEC
    SBC    #$01
    ASL
    TAX
    LDA    SCRATCH2+1
    STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
    INX
    LDA    SCRATCH2
    STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
    RTS

.global_var:
    SEC
    SBC    #$10
    ASL
    STA    SCRATCH1
    LDA    #$00
    ROL
    STA    SCRATCH1+1

```

```

CLC
LDA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR
ADC    SCRATCH1
STA    SCRATCH1
LDA    GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR+1
ADC    SCRATCH1+1
STA    SCRATCH1+1
LDY    #$00
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
STA    (SCRATCH1),Y
INY
LDA    SCRATCH2
STA    (SCRATCH1),Y
RTS

```

Defines:

store\_var, used in chunks 159a and 188.

Uses GLOBAL\_ZVARS\_ADDR 204, LOCAL\_ZVARS 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_next\_code\_byte 37, and push 35.

The var\_put routine stores the value in SCRATCH2 into the variable in the A register. Note that if the variable is 0, then it replaces the top value on the stack.

124     $\langle \text{Store to var A 124} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

var_put:
SUBROUTINE

ORA    #$00
BEQ    .pop_push
JMP    store_var2

pop_push:
JSR    pop
JMP    push

.pop_push:
LDA    SCRATCH2
PHA
LDA    SCRATCH2+1
PHA
JSR    pop
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2+1
PLA
STA    SCRATCH2
JMP    push

```

Defines:

pop\_push, used in chunk 122.

var\_put, used in chunks 160a and 166b.

Uses SCRATCH2 204, pop 36, and push 35.

# Chapter 11

## Calls and returns

### 11.1 Call

The `call` instruction calls the routine at the packed address in operand 0. A call may have anywhere from 0 to 3 arguments, and a routine always has a return value. Note that calls to address 0 merely returns false (0).

The z-code byte after the operands gives the variable in which to store the return value from the call.

```
125  <Instruction call 125>≡ (207) 126a>
      instr_call:
          LDA    OPERANDO
          ORA    OPERANDO+1
          BNE    .push_frame
          STOW   #$0000, SCRATCH2
          JMP    store_and_next
```

Defines:

`instr_call`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OPERANDO` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, and `store_and_next` 159a.

Packed addresses are byte addresses divided by two.

The routine's arguments are stored in local variables (starting from variable 1). Such used local variables are saved before the call, and restored after the call.

As usual with calls, calls push a frame onto the stack, while returns pop a frame off the stack.

The frame consists of the frame's stack count, Z\_PC, and the frame's stack pointer.

```
126a  <Instruction call 125>+≡ (207) <125 126b>
      .push_frame:
      MOVB    FRAME_STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2
      MOVB    Z_PC, SCRATCH2+1
      JSR     push
      MOVW    FRAME_Z_SP, SCRATCH2
      JSR     push
      MOVW    Z_PC+1, SCRATCH2
      JSR     push
      STOB    #$00, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
```

Uses FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT 204, FRAME\_Z\_SP 204, MOVB 11b, MOVW 12a, SCRATCH2 204, STOB 11b, ZCODE\_PAGE.VALID 204, Z\_PC 204, and push 35.

Next, we unpack the call address and put it in Z\_PC.

```
126b  <Instruction call 125>+≡ (207) <126a 126c>
      LDA     OPERANDO
      ASL
      STA     Z_PC
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      ROL
      STA     Z_PC+1
      LDA     #$00
      ROL
      STA     Z_PC+2
```

Uses OPERANDO 204 and Z\_PC 204.

The first byte in a routine is the number of local variables (0-15). We now retrieve it (and save it for later).

```
126c  <Instruction call 125>+≡ (207) <126b 127>
      JSR     get_next_code_byte    ; local_var_count = get_next_code_byte()
      PHA
      ORA     #$00                  ; Save local_var_count
      BEQ     .after_loop2
```

Uses get\_next\_code\_byte 37.

Now we push and initialize the local variables. The next words in the routine are the initial values of the local variables.

```

127  <Instruction call 125>+≡                                     (207) <126c 128a>
      LDX      #$00                                           ; X = 0

      .push_and_init_local_vars:
      PHA                                           ; Save local_var_count
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X                           ; Push LOCAL_ZVAR[X] onto the stack
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      INX
      LDA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      STA      SCRATCH2
      DEX
      TXA
      PHA
      JSR      push

      JSR      get_next_code_byte      ; SCRATCH2 = next init val
      PHA
      JSR      get_next_code_byte
      STA      SCRATCH2
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2+1

      PLA                                           ; Restore local_var_count
      TAX
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1                           ; LOCAL_ZVARS[X] = SCRATCH2
      STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      INX
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      LOCAL_ZVARS,X
      INX                                           ; Increment X
      PLA                                           ; Decrement local_var_count
      SEC
      SBC      #$01
      BNE      .push_and_init_local_vars ; Loop until no more vars

```

Uses LOCAL\_ZVARS 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_next\_code\_byte 37, and push 35.



Next, we load the local variables with the call arguments.

```

128a  <Instruction call 125>+≡ (207) <127 128b>
      .after_loop2:
          LDA    OPERAND_COUNT          ; count = OPERAND_COUNT - 1
          STA    SCRATCH3
          DEC    SCRATCH3
          BEQ    .done_init_local_vars ; if (!count) .done_init_local_vars

          STOB   #$00, SCRATCH1         ; operand = 0
          STOB   #$00, SCRATCH2         ; zvar = 0

      .loop:
          LDX    SCRATCH1                ; LOCAL_ZVARS[zvar] = OPERANDO[operand]
          LDA    OPERANDO+1,X
          LDX    SCRATCH2
          STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
          INC    SCRATCH2
          LDX    SCRATCH1
          LDA    OPERANDO,X
          LDX    SCRATCH2
          STA    LOCAL_ZVARS,X
          INC    SCRATCH2                ; ++zvar
          INC    SCRATCH1                ; ++operand
          INC    SCRATCH1
          DEC    SCRATCH3                ; --count
          BNE    .loop                  ; if (count) .loop

```

Uses LOCAL\_ZVARS 204, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND\_COUNT 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, and STOB 11b.

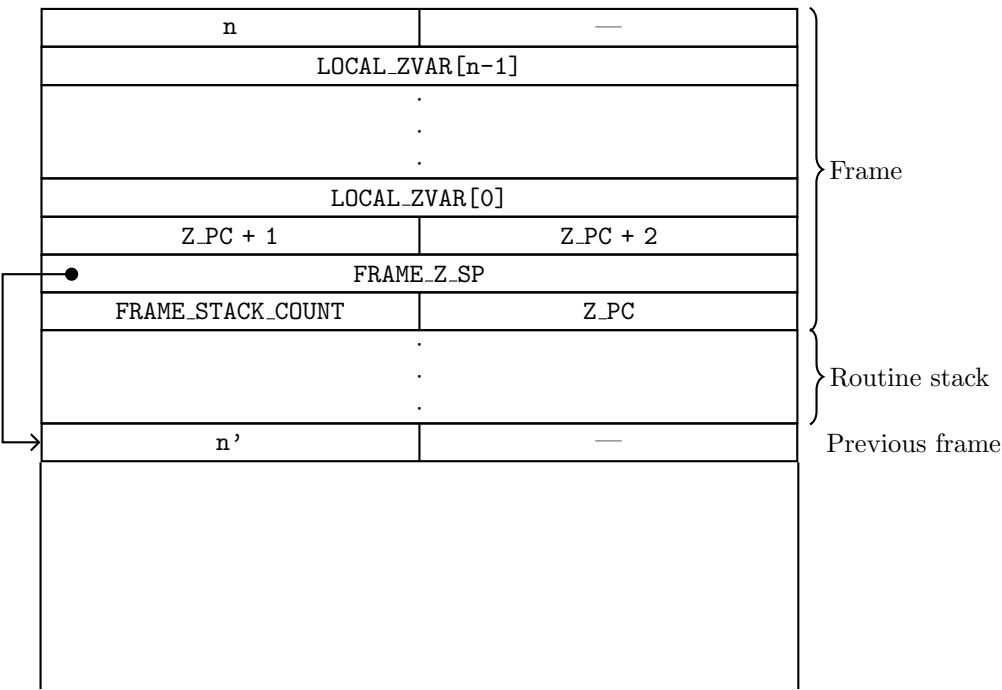
Finally, we add the local var count to the frame, update FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT and FRAME\_Z\_SP, and jump to the routine's first instruction.

```

128b  <Instruction call 125>+≡ (207) <128a>
      .done_init_local_vars:
          PULB   SCRATCH2                ; Restore local_var_count
          JSR    push                    ; Push local_var_count
          MOVB   STACK_COUNT, FRAME_STACK_COUNT
          MOVW   Z_SP, FRAME_Z_SP
          JMP    do_instruction

```

Uses FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT 204, FRAME\_Z\_SP 204, MOVB 11b, MOVW 12a, PULB 12c, SCRATCH2 204, STACK\_COUNT 204, Z\_SP 204, do\_instruction 112, and push 35.



11.2 Return

The `ret` instruction returns from a routine. It effectively undoes what `call` did. First, we set the stack pointer and count to the frame’s stack pointer and count.

```
129  <Instruction ret 129>≡ (207) 130a>
      instr_ret:
      SUBROUTINE

      MOVW    FRAME_Z_SP, Z_SP
      MOVB    FRAME_STACK_COUNT, STACK_COUNT
```

Defines:  
    `instr_ret`, used in chunks 109, 183a, and 184a.  
Uses `FRAME_STACK_COUNT` 204, `FRAME_Z_SP` 204, `MOVB` 11b, `MOVW` 12a, `STACK_COUNT` 204, and `Z_SP` 204.

Next, we restore the locals. We first pop the number of locals off the stack, and if there were none, we can skip the whole local restore process.

```
130a  <Instruction ret 129>+≡ (207) <129 130b>
      JSR      pop
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      BEQ      .done_locals
Uses SCRATCH2 204 and pop 36.
```

We then set up the loop variables for restoring the locals.

```
130b  <Instruction ret 129>+≡ (207) <130a 130c>
      STOW     LOCAL_ZVARS-2, SCRATCH1 ; ptr = &LOCAL_ZVARS[-1]
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, SCRATCH3      ; count = STRATCH2
      ASL      ; ptr += 2 * count
      ADDA     SCRATCH1
Uses ADDA 14a, LOCAL_ZVARS 204, MOVW 11b, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204,
and STOW 10.
```

Now we pop the locals off the stack in reverse order.

```
130c  <Instruction ret 129>+≡ (207) <130b 130d>
      .loop:
      JSR      pop ; SCRATCH2 = pop()
      LDY      #$01 ; *ptr = SCRATCH2
      LDA      SCRATCH2
      STA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      DEY
      LDA      SCRATCH2+1
      STA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      SUBB     SCRATCH1, #$02 ; ptr -= 2
      DEC      SCRATCH3 ; --count
      BNE      .loop
Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, SUBB 16b, and pop 36.
```

Next, we restore Z\_PC and the frame stack pointer and count.

```
130d  <Instruction ret 129>+≡ (207) <130c 131>
      .done_locals:
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, Z_PC+1
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, FRAME_Z_SP
      JSR      pop
      MOVW     SCRATCH2+1, Z_PC
      MOVW     SCRATCH2, FRAME_STACK_COUNT
Uses FRAME_STACK_COUNT 204, FRAME_Z_SP 204, MOVW 11b, MOVW 12a, SCRATCH2 204, Z_PC 204,
and pop 36.
```

Finally, we store the return value.

```
131  <Instruction ret 129>+≡ (207) <130d
      STOB    #$00, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
      JMP     store_and_next
Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, STOB 11b, ZCODE_PAGE_VALID 204,
and store_and_next 159a.
```

## Chapter 12

# Objects

### 12.1 Object table format

Objects are stored in an object table, and there are at most 255 of them. They are numbered from 1 to 255, and object 0 is the “nothing” object.

The object table contains 31 words (62 bytes) for property defaults, and then at most 255 objects, each containing 9 bytes.

The first 4 bytes of each object entry are 32 bits of attribute flags (offsets 0-3). Next is the parent object number (offset 4), the sibling object number (offset 5), and the child object number (offset 6). Finally, there are two bytes of properties (offsets 7 and 8).

### 12.2 Getting an object’s address

The `get_object_address` routine gets the address of the object number in the A register and puts it in `SCRATCH2`.

It does this by first setting `SCRATCH2` to 9 times the A register (since objects entries are 9 bytes long).

```
132  <Get object address 132>≡ (207) 133a>
      get_object_addr:
      SUBROUTINE

      STA    SCRATCH2
      LDA    #$00
```

```

STA    SCRATCH2+1
LDA    SCRATCH2
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
ASL    SCRATCH2
ROL    SCRATCH2+1
CLC
ADC    SCRATCH2
BCC    .continue
INC    SCRATCH2+1
CLC

```

.continue:

Defines:

get\_object\_addr, used in chunks 134, 136–38, 140, 179b, 188, 190, 196, and 197.  
 Uses SCRATCH2 204.

Next, we add FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET (53) to SCRATCH2. This skips the 31 words of property defaults, which would be 62 bytes, but since object numbers start from 1, the first object is at 53+9=62 bytes.

```

133a  <Get object address 132>+≡ (207) <132 133b>
      ADC    #FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET
      STA    SCRATCH2
      BCC    .continue2
      INC    SCRATCH2+1

```

.continue2:

Uses FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET 206a and SCRATCH2 204.

Finally, we get the address of the object table stored in the header and add it to SCRATCH2. The resulting address is thus in SCRATCH2.

```

133b  <Get object address 132>+≡ (207) <133a
      LDY    #HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET-1
      LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      CLC
      ADC    SCRATCH2
      STA    SCRATCH2
      DEY
      LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      ADC    SCRATCH2+1
      ADC    Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
      STA    SCRATCH2+1
      RTS

```

Uses HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET 206a and SCRATCH2 204.

## 12.3 Removing an object

The `remove_obj` routine removes the object number in `OPERANDO` from the object tree. This detaches the object from its parent, but the object retains its children.

Recall that an object is a node in a linked list. Each node contains a pointer to its parent, a pointer to its sibling (the next child of the parent), and a pointer to its first child. The null pointer is zero.

First, we get the object's address, and then get its parent pointer. If the parent pointer is null, it means the object is already detached, so we return.

```
134a  <Remove object 134a>≡ (207) 134b>
      remove_obj:
      SUBROUTINE

      LDA     OPERANDO          ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<obj_num>
      JSR     get_object_addr
      LDY     #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET ; A = obj_ptr->parent
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      BNE     .continue        ; if (!A) return
      RTS
```

.continue:

Defines:

`remove_obj`, used in chunks 197 and 199a.

Uses `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 206a, `OPERANDO` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, and `get_object_addr` 132.

Next, we save the object's address on the stack.

```
134b  <Remove object 134a>+≡ (207) <134a 134c>
      TAX
      LDA     SCRATCH2          ; save obj_ptr
      PHA
      LDA     SCRATCH2+1
      PHA
      TXA
```

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204.

Next, we get the parent's first child pointer.

```
134c  <Remove object 134a>+≡ (207) <134b 135a>
      JSR     get_object_addr    ; parent_ptr = get_object_addr<A>
      LDY     #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET ; child_num = parent_ptr->child
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
```

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 206a, `SCRATCH2` 204, and `get_object_addr` 132.

If the first child pointer isn't the object we want to detach, then we will need to traverse the children list to find it.

```
135a  <Remove object 134a>+≡ (207) <134c 135b>
      CMP      OPERANDO          ; if (child_num != obj_num) loop
      BNE      .loop
Uses OPERANDO 204.
```

But otherwise, we get the object's sibling and replace the parent's first child with it.

```
135b  <Remove object 134a>+≡ (207) <135a 136a>
      PLA                                ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      PHA
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      PHA
      LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; A = obj_ptr->next
      LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
      LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET  ; parent_ptr->child = A
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      JMP      .detach
Uses OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET 206a, OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET 206a, SCRATCH1 204,
and SCRATCH2 204.
```

Detaching the object means we null out the parent pointer of the object. Then we can return.

```
135c  <Detach object 135c>≡ (136b)
      .detach:
      PLA                                ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH2+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH2
      LDY      #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET ; obj_ptr->parent = 0
      LDA      #$00
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      INY
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
      RTS
Uses OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET 206a and SCRATCH2 204.
```



Looping over the children just involves traversing the children list and checking if the current child pointer is equal to the object we want to detach. For a self-consistent table, an object's parent must contain the object as a child, and so it would have to be found at some point.

```

136a  <Remove object 134a>+≡ (207) <135b 136b>
      .loop:
        JSR      get_object_addr      ; child_ptr = get_object_addr<child_num>
        LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; child_num = child_ptr->next
        LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        CMP      OPERANDO              ; if (child_num != obj_num) loop
        BNE      .loop

```

Uses OBJECT\_SIBLING\_OFFSET 206a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, and get\_object\_addr 132.

SCRATCH2 now contains the address of the child whose sibling is the object we want to detach. So, we set SCRATCH1 to the object we want to detach, get its sibling, and set it as the sibling of the SCRATCH2 object. Then we can detach the object.

Diagram this.

```

136b  <Remove object 134a>+≡ (207) <136a>
      PLA                      ; restore obj_ptr
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      PLA
      STA      SCRATCH1
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      PHA
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      PHA
      LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y      ; child_ptr->next = obj_ptr->next
      STA      (SCRATCH2),Y

```

<Detach object 135c>

Uses SCRATCH1 204 and SCRATCH2 204.

## 12.4 Object strings

The `print_obj_in_A` routine prints the short name of the object in the A register. The short name of an object is stored at the beginning of the object's properties as a length-prefixed z-encoded string. The length is actually the number of words, not bytes or characters, and is a single byte. This means that the number of bytes in the string is at most  $255 \times 2 = 510$ . And since z-encoded characters are encoded as three characters for every two bytes, the number of characters in a short name is at most  $255 \times 3 = 765$ .

```

137  <Print object in A 137>≡ (207)
      print_obj_in_A:
          JSR      get_object_addr      ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<A>
          LDY      #OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET ; props_ptr = obj_ptr->props
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1+1
          INY
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1
          MOVW     SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          INCW     SCRATCH2              ; ++props_ptr
          JSR      load_address          ; Z_PC2 = props_ptr
          JMP      print_zstring         ; print_zstring<Z_PC2>

```

Defines:

`print_obj_in_A`, used in chunks 69 and 186b.

Uses `INCW` 13b, `MOVW` 12a, `OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET` 206a, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `get_object_addr` 132, `load_address` 45b, and `print_zstring` 62.

## 12.5 Object attributes

The attributes of an object are stored in the first 4 bytes of the object in the object table. These were also called “flags” in the original Infocom source code, and as such, attributes are binary flags. The order of attributes in these bytes is such that attribute 0 is in bit 7 of byte 0, and attribute 31 is in bit 0 of byte 3.

The `attr_ptr_and_mask` routine is used in attribute instructions to get the pointer to the attributes for the object in `OPERANDO` and mask for the attribute number in `OPERAND1`.

The result from this routine is that `SCRATCH1` contains the relevant attribute word, `SCRATCH3` contains the relevant attribute mask, and `SCRATCH2` contains the address of the attribute word.

We first set `SCRATCH2` to point to the 2-byte word containing the attribute.

```
138  <Get attribute pointer and mask 138>≡ (207) 139a>
    attr_ptr_and_mask:
        LDA    OPERANDO          ; SCRATCH2 = get_object_addr<obj_num>
        JSR    get_object_addr
        LDA    OPERAND1          ; if (attr_num >= #$10) {
        CMP    #$10              ; SCRATCH2 += 2; attr_num -= #$10
        BCC    .continue2        ; }
        SEC
        SBC    #$10
        INCW   SCRATCH2
        INCW   SCRATCH2

    .continue2:
        STA    SCRATCH1          ; SCRATCH1 = attr_num
```

Defines:

`attr_ptr_and_mask`, used in chunks 181b, 187, and 199b.

Uses `INCW` 13b, `OPERANDO` 204, `OPERAND1` 204, `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, and `get_object_addr` 132.

Next, we set SCRATCH3 to #\$0001 and then bit-shift left by 15 minus the attribute (mod 16) that we want. Thus, attribute 0 and attribute 16 will result in #\$8000.

```

139a  <Get attribute pointer and mask 138>+≡ (207) <138 139b>
      STOW    #$0001, SCRATCH3
      LDA     #$0F
      SEC
      SBC     SCRATCH1
      TAX

      .shift_loop:
      BEQ     .done_shift
      ASL     SCRATCH3
      ROL     SCRATCH3+1
      DEX
      JMP     .shift_loop

```

.done\_shift:

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, and STOW 10.

Finally, we load the attribute word into SCRATCH1.

```

139b  <Get attribute pointer and mask 138>+≡ (207) <139a>
      LDY     #$00
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA     SCRATCH1+1
      INY
      LDA     (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA     SCRATCH1
      RTS

```

Uses SCRATCH1 204 and SCRATCH2 204.

## 12.6 Object properties

The pointer to the properties of an object is stored in the last 2 bytes of the object in the object table. The first “property” is actually the object’s short name, as detailed in [Object strings](#).

Each property starts with a size byte, which is encoded with the lower 5 bits being the property number, and the upper 3 bits being the data size minus 1 (so 0 means 1 byte and 7 means 8 bytes). The property numbers are ordered from lowest to highest for more efficient searching.

The `get_property_ptr` routine gets the pointer to the property table for the object in `OPERANDO` and stores it in `SCRATCH2`. In addition, it returns the size of the first “property” (the short name) in the Y register, so that `SCRATCH2+Y` would point to the first numbered property.

```

140  <Get property pointer 140>≡ (207)
      get_property_ptr:
          SUBROUTINE

              LDA      OPERANDO
              JSR      get_object_addr
              LDY      #OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              STA      SCRATCH1+1
              INY
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              STA      SCRATCH1
              ADDW      SCRATCH1, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
              LDY      #$00
              LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
              ASL
              TAY
              INY
              RTS

```

Defines:

`get_property_ptr`, used in chunks [189](#), [191](#), [194](#), and [198](#).

Uses `ADDW` [15c](#), `OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET` [206a](#), `OPERANDO` [204](#), `SCRATCH1` [204](#), `SCRATCH2` [204](#), and `get_object_addr` [132](#).

The `get_property_num` routine gets the property number being currently pointed to.

141a  $\langle \textit{Get property number 141a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
`get_property_num:`  
 SUBROUTINE

```

    LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    AND    #$1F
    RTS

```

Defines:

`get_property_num`, used in chunks 189, 191, 194, and 198.  
 Uses SCRATCH2 204.

The `get_property_len` routine gets the length of the property being currently pointed to, minus one.

141b  $\langle \textit{Get property length 141b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
`get_property_len:`  
 SUBROUTINE

```

    LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    ROR
    ROR
    ROR
    ROR
    ROR
    ROR
    AND    #$07
    RTS

```

Defines:

`get_property_len`, used in chunks 142, 193, 195, and 198.  
 Uses SCRATCH2 204.

The `next_property` routine updates the Y register to point to the next property in the property table.

```
142  ⟨Next property 142⟩≡ (207)
      next_property:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      get_property_len
      TAX

      .loop:
      INY
      DEX
      BPL      .loop
      INY
      RTS
```

Defines:

`next_property`, used in chunks 189, 191, 194, and 198.  
Uses `get_property_len` 141b.

## Chapter 13

# Saving and restoring the game

### 13.0.1 Save prompts for the user

The first part of saving the game asks the user to insert a save diskette, along with the save number (0-7), the drive slot (1-7), and the drive number (1 or 2) containing the save disk.

We first prompt the user to insert the disk:

```
143  <Insert save diskette 143>≡ (207) 144a>
      please_insert_save_diskette:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR      home
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
      STOW     sPleaseInsert, SCRATCH2
      LDX      #28
      JSR      print_ascii_string
      JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
```

Defines:

    please\_insert\_save\_diskette, used in chunks 149a and 152b.

Uses SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 54, home 48, print\_ascii\_string 59b,  
and sPleaseInsert 144b.



Next, we prompt the user for what position they want to save into. The number must be between 0 and 7, otherwise the user is asked again.

```
144a  <Insert save diskette 143>+≡ (207) <143 146a>
      .get_position_from_user:
        LDA      #(sPositionPrompt-sSlotPrompt)
        STA      prompt_offset
        JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
        CMP      #'0
        BCC      .get_position_from_user
        CMP      #'8
        BCS      .get_position_from_user
        STA      save_position
        JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses buffer\_char 57, prompt\_offset 144b, sPositionPrompt 144b, sSlotPrompt 144b, and save\_position 144b.

```
144b  <Save diskette strings 144b>≡ (207)
      sPleaseInsert:
        DC       "PLEASE INSERT SAVE DISKETTE,"
      prompt_offset:
        DC       0
      sSlotPrompt:
        DC       "SLOT      (1-7):"
      save_slot:
        DC       '6
      sDrivePrompt:
        DC       "DRIVE     (1-2):"
      save_drive:
        DC       '2
      sPositionPrompt:
        DC       "POSITION (0-7):"
      save_position:
        DC       '0
      sDefault:
        DC       "DEFAULT = "
      sReturnToBegin:
        DC       "--- PRESS 'RETURN' KEY TO BEGIN ---"
```

Defines:

```
prompt_offset, used in chunks 144-46.
sDrivePrompt, used in chunk 146b.
sPleaseInsert, used in chunk 143.
sPositionPrompt, used in chunk 144a.
sReturnToBegin, used in chunk 147a.
sSlotPrompt, used in chunks 144-46.
save_drive, used in chunk 146b.
save_position, used in chunks 144a and 147b.
save_slot, used in chunks 145 and 146a.
```

The `get_prompted_number_from_user` routine takes an offset from the `sSlotPrompt` symbol in `prompt_offset`. This offset must point to a 15-character prompt. The routine will print the prompt along with its default value (the byte after the prompt), get a single digit from the user, and then store that back into the default value.

```

145  <Get prompted number from user 145>≡ (207)
      get_prompted_number_from_user:
          SUBROUTINE

              JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
              STOW     sSlotPrompt, SCRATCH2      ; print prompt
              ADDB     SCRATCH2, prompt_offset
              LDX      #15
              JSR      print_ascii_string
              JSR      dump_buffer_line
              LDA      #25
              STA      CH
              LDA      #$3F                      ; set inverse
              STA      INVFLG
              STOW     sDefault, SCRATCH2        ; print "DEFAULT = "
              LDX      #10
              JSR      cout_string
              STOW     save_slot, SCRATCH2        ; print default value
              ADDB     SCRATCH2, prompt_offset
              LDX      #1
              JSR      cout_string
              LDA      #$FF                      ; clear inverse
              STA      INVFLG
              JSR      RDKEY                      ; A = read key
              PHA
              LDA      #25
              STA      CH
              JSR      CLREOL                    ; clear line
              PLA
              CMP      #$8D                      ; newline?
              BNE      .end
              LDY      prompt_offset            ; store result
              LDA      save_slot,Y

          .end:
              AND      #$7F
              RTS

```

Uses `ADDB 15a`, `CH 203`, `CLREOL 203`, `INVFLG 203`, `RDKEY 203`, `SCRATCH2 204`, `STOW 10`, `cout_string 47`, `dump_buffer_line 53`, `dump_buffer_with_more 54`, `print_ascii_string 59b`, `prompt_offset 144b`, `sSlotPrompt 144b`, and `save_slot 144b`.

Getting back to the save procedure, we then ask the user for the drive slot, which must be between 1 and 7. We also store the slot times 16 in `iob.slot_times_16`.

```
146a  <Insert save diskette 143>+≡ (207) <144a 146b>
      .get_slot_from_user:
      LDA      #(sSlotPrompt - sSlotPrompt)
      STA      prompt_offset
      JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
      CMP      #'1
      BCC      .get_slot_from_user
      CMP      #'8
      BCS      .get_slot_from_user
      TAX
      AND      #$07
      ASL
      ASL
      ASL
      ASL
      STA      iob.slot_times_16
      TXA
      STA      save_slot
      JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses `buffer_char` 57, `iob` 105, `prompt_offset` 144b, `sSlotPrompt` 144b, and `save_slot` 144b.

Next, we ask the user for the drive number, which must be 1 or 2. This value is stored in `iob.drive`.

```
146b  <Insert save diskette 143>+≡ (207) <146a 147a>
      .get_drive_from_user:
      LDA      #(sDrivePrompt - sSlotPrompt)
      STA      prompt_offset
      JSR      get_prompted_number_from_user
      CMP      #'1
      BCC      .get_drive_from_user
      CMP      #'3
      BCS      .get_drive_from_user
      TAX
      AND      #$03
      STA      iob.drive
      TXA
      STA      save_drive
      JSR      buffer_char
```

Uses `buffer_char` 57, `iob` 105, `prompt_offset` 144b, `sDrivePrompt` 144b, `sSlotPrompt` 144b, and `save_drive` 144b.

Next, we prompt the user to start.

```

147a  <Insert save diskette 143>+≡ (207) <146b 147b>
      .press_return_key_to_begin:
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sReturnToBegin, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #35
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_line
          JSR      RDKEY
          CMP      #$8D
          BNE      .press_return_key_to_begin

```

Uses RDKEY 203, SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, dump\_buffer\_line 53, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 54, print\_ascii\_string 59b, and sReturnToBegin 144b.

SCRATCH1 is going to contain  $64 * \text{save\_position} - 1$  at the end of the routine. This is the sector number (minus one) where the save data will be written. Thus, a save game takes 64 sectors.

```

147b  <Insert save diskette 143>+≡ (207) <147a
      LDA      #$FF
      STA      SCRATCH1
      STA      SCRATCH1+1
      LDA      save_position
      AND      #$07
      BEQ      .end
      TAY

      .loop:
          ADDB   SCRATCH1, #64
          DEY
          BNE    .loop

      .end:
          JSR    dump_buffer_with_more
          RTS

```

Uses ADDB 15a, SCRATCH1 204, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 54, and save\_position 144b.

When the save is eventually complete, the user is prompted to reinsert the game diskette.

```

148  <Reinsert game diskette 148>≡ (207)
      sReinsertGameDiskette:
          DC      "PLEASE RE-INSERT GAME DISKETTE,"
      sPressReturnToContinue:
          DC      "--- PRESS 'RETURN' KEY TO CONTINUE ---"

      please_reinsert_game_diskette:
          SUBROUTINE

          LDA      iob.slot_times_16
          CMP      #$60
          BNE      .set_slot6_drive1
          LDA      iob.drive
          CMP      #$01
          BNE      .set_slot6_drive1
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sReinsertGameDiskette, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #31
          JSR      print_ascii_string

      .await_return_key:
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW     sPressReturnToContinue, SCRATCH2
          LDX      #38
          JSR      print_ascii_string
          JSR      dump_buffer_line
          JSR      RDKEY
          CMP      #$8D
          BNE      .await_return_key
          JSR      dump_buffer_with_more

      .set_slot6_drive1:
          LDA      #$60
          STA      iob.slot_times_16
          LDA      #$01
          STA      iob.drive
          RTS

```

Defines:

please\_reinsert\_game\_diskette, used in chunks 151c, 152a, and 155.

sPressReturnToContinue, never used.

sReinsertGameDiskette, never used.

Uses RDKEY 203, SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, dump\_buffer\_line 53, dump\_buffer\_with\_more 54, iob 105, and print\_ascii\_string 59b.

### 13.0.2 Saving the game state

When the virtual machine is instructed to save, the `instr_save` routine is executed.

The instruction first calls the `please_insert_save_diskette` routine to prompt the user to insert a save diskette and set the disk parameters.

```
149a  <Instruction save 149a>≡ (207) 149b>
      instr_save:
      SUBROUTINE
```

```
      JSR      please_insert_save_diskette
```

Defines:

`instr_save`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `please_insert_save_diskette` 143.

Next, we store the z-machine version number to the first byte of the `BUFF_AREA`. We maintain a pointer into the buffer in the X register.

```
149b  <Instruction save 149a>+≡ (207) <149a 149c>
      LDX      #$00
      LDY      #$00
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      STA      BUFF_AREA,X
      INX
```

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204.

Next, we copy the 3 bytes of `Z_PC` to the buffer. This is actually done in reverse order.

```
149c  <Instruction save 149a>+≡ (207) <149b 150b>
      STOW     #Z_PC, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$03
      JSR      copy_data_to_buff
```

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, `Z_PC` 204, and `copy_data_to_buff` 150a.

The `copy_data_to_buff` routine copies the number of bytes in the Y register from the address in `SCRATCH2` to the buffer, updating X as the pointer into the buffer.

150a     $\langle \textit{Copy data to buff 150a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `copy_data_to_buff:`  
           SUBROUTINE

```

DEY
LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
STA      BUFF_AREA,X
INX
CPY      #$00
BNE      copy_data_to_buff
RTS

```

Defines:

`copy_data_to_buff`, used in chunks 149-51.

Uses `BUFF_AREA` 204 and `SCRATCH2` 204.

We copy the 30 bytes of the `LOCAL_ZVARS` to the buffer, then 6 bytes for the stack state starting from `STACK_COUNT`. The collected buffer is then written to the first save sector on disk.

150b     $\langle \textit{Instruction save 149a} \rangle + \equiv$  (207)  $\langle 149c \ 151a \rangle$   
           `STOW        #LOCAL_ZVARS, SCRATCH2`  
           `LDY        #30`  
           `JSR        copy_data_to_buff`  
  
           `STOW        #STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2`  
           `LDY        #6`  
           `JSR        copy_data_to_buff`  
  
           `JSR        write_next_sector`  
           `BCS        .fail`

Uses `LOCAL_ZVARS` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `STACK_COUNT` 204, `STOW` 10, `copy_data_to_buff` 150a, and `write_next_sector` 108.

The second sector written contains 256 bytes starting from #0280, and the third sector contains 256 bytes starting from #0380.

```
151a  <Instruction save 149a>+≡ (207) <150b 151b>
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0280, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$00
      JSR      copy_data_to_buff

      JSR      write_next_sector
      BCS      .fail

      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0380, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$68
      JSR      copy_data_to_buff

      JSR      write_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
```

Uses SCRATCH2 204, STOW 10, copy\_data\_to\_buff 150a, and write\_next\_sector 108.

Next, we write the game memory starting from Z\_HEADER\_ADDR all the way up to the base of static memory given by the header.

```
151b  <Instruction save 149a>+≡ (207) <151a 151c>
      MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      STA      SCRATCH3 ; big-endian!
      INC      SCRATCH3

      .loop:
      JSR      inc_sector_and_write
      BCS      .fail
      INC      SCRATCH2+1
      DEC      SCRATCH3
      BNE      .loop
      JSR      inc_sector_and_write
      BCS      .fail
```

Uses HEADER\_STATIC\_MEM\_BASE 206a, MOVW 12a, SCRATCH2 204, SCRATCH3 204, and inc\_sector\_and\_write 108.

Finally, we ask the user to reinsert the game diskette, and we're done. The instruction branches, assuming success.

```
151c  <Instruction save 149a>+≡ (207) <151b 152a>
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      branch
```

Uses branch 161a and please\_reinsert\_game\_diskette 148.



On failure, the instruction also asks the user to reinsert the game diskette, but branches assuming failure.

```
152a  <Instruction save 149a>+≡ (207) <151c>
      .fail:
          JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
          JMP      negated_branch
      Uses negated_branch 161a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 148.
```

### 13.0.3 Restoring the game state

When the virtual machine is instructed to restore, the `instr_restore` routine is executed. The instruction starts by asking the user to insert the save diskette, and sets up the disk parameters.

```
152b  <Instruction restore 152b>≡ (207) 152c>
      instr_restore:
          SUBROUTINE

          JSR      please_insert_save_diskette
      Defines:
          instr_restore, used in chunk 109.
      Uses please_insert_save_diskette 143.
```

The next step is to read the first sector and check the z-machine version number to make sure it's the same as the currently executing z-machine version. Otherwise the instruction fails.

```
152c  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <152b 153a>
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCC      .continue
      JMP      .fail

      .continue:
          LDX      #$00
          LDY      #$00
          LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          CMP      BUFF_AREA,X
          BEQ      .continue2
          JMP      .fail
      Uses BUFF_AREA 204 and read_next_sector 107.
```

We also save the current game flags in the header at byte #11.

```
153a  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <152c 153b>
      .continue2:
          LDY    #11                ; Game flags.
          LDA    (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
          STA    SIGN_BIT
```

We then restore the Z\_PC, local variables, and stack state from the same sector.

```
153b  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <153a 154a>
      INX
      STOW     #Z_PC, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #3
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      LDA      #$00
      STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      STOW     #LOCAL_ZVARS, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #30
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      STOW     #STACK_COUNT, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #6
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
```

Uses LOCAL\_ZVARS 204, SCRATCH2 204, STACK\_COUNT 204, STOW 10, ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID 204, Z\_PC 204, and copy\_data\_from\_buff 153c.

The copy\_data\_from\_buff routine copies the number of bytes in the Y register from BUFF\_AREA to the address in SCRATCH2, updating X as the pointer into the buffer.

```
153c  <Copy data from buff 153c>≡ (207)
      copy_data_from_buff:
          SUBROUTINE

          DEY
          LDA    BUFF_AREA,X
          STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
          INX
          CPY    #$00
          BNE    copy_data_from_buff
          RTS
```

Defines:

copy\_data\_from\_buff, used in chunks 153b and 154a.

Uses BUFF\_AREA 204 and SCRATCH2 204.

Next we restore 256 bytes starting from `#$0280` from the second sector, and 256 bytes starting from `#$0380` from the third sector.

```
154a  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <153b 154b>
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0280, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$00
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
      JSR      read_next_sector
      BCS      .fail
      LDX      #$00
      STOW     #$0380, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$68
      JSR      copy_data_from_buff
```

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, `copy_data_from_buff` 153c, and `read_next_sector` 107.

Next, we restore the game memory starting from `Z_HEADER_ADDR` all the way up to the base of static memory given by the header.

```
154b  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <154a 154c>
      MOVW     Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
      LDY      #$0E
      LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
      STA      SCRATCH3                ; big-endian!
      INC      SCRATCH3

      .loop:
      JSR      inc_sector_and_read
      BCS      .fail
      INC      SCRATCH2+1
      DEC      SCRATCH3
      BNE      .loop
```

Uses `MOVW` 12a, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, and `inc_sector_and_read` 107.

Then we restore the game flags in the header at byte `#$11` from before the actual restore.

```
154c  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <154b 155a>
      LDA      SIGN_BIT
      LDY      #$11
      STA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
```

Finally, we ask the user to reinsert the game diskette, and we're done. The instruction branches, assuming success.

```
155a  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <154c 155b>
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      branch
Uses branch 161a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 148.
```

On failure, the instruction also asks the user to reinsert the game diskette, but branches assuming failure.

```
155b  <Instruction restore 152b>+≡ (207) <155a
      .fail:
      JSR      please_reinsert_game_diskette
      JMP      negated_branch
Uses negated_branch 161a and please_reinsert_game_diskette 148.
```

## Chapter 14

# Instructions

After an instruction finishes, it must jump to `do_instruction` in order to execute the next instruction.

Note that return values from functions are always stored in `OPERANDO`.

Data movement instructions	
<code>load</code>	Loads a variable into a variable
<code>loadb</code>	Loads a byte from a byte array into a variable
<code>loadw</code>	Loads a word from a word array into a variable
<code>store</code>	Stores a value into a variable
<code>storeb</code>	Stores a byte into a byte array
<code>storew</code>	Stores a word into a word array
Stack instructions	
<code>pop</code>	Throws away the top item from the stack
<code>pull</code>	Pulls a value from the stack into a variable
<code>push</code>	Pushes a value onto the stack
Decrement/increment instructions	
<code>dec</code>	Decrements a variable
<code>inc</code>	Increments a variable
Arithmetic instructions	
<code>add</code>	Adds two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>div</code>	Divides two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>mod</code>	Modulus of two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>mul</code>	Multiplies two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
<code>random</code>	Stores a random number to a variable

sub	Subtracts two signed 16-bit values, storing to a variable
-----	---

---

Logical instructions	
and	Bitwise ANDs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
not	Bitwise NOTs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable
or	Bitwise ORs two 16-bit values, storing to a variable

---

Conditional branch instructions	
dec_chk	Decrements a variable then branches if less than value
inc_chk	Increments a variable then branches if greater than value
je	Branches if value is equal to any subsequent operand
jg	Branches if value is (signed) greater than second operand
jin	Branches if object is a direct child of second operand object
j1	Branches if value is (signed) less than second operand
jz	Branches if value is equal to zero
test	Branches if all set bits in first operand are set in second operand
test_attr	Branches if object has attribute in second operand set

---

Jump and subroutine instructions	
call	Calls a subroutine
jump	Jumps unconditionally
print_ret	Prints a string and returns true
ret	Returns a value
ret_popped	Returns the popped value from the stack
rfalse	Returns false
rtrue	Returns true

---

Print instructions	
new_line	Prints a newline
print	Prints the immediate string
print_addr	Prints the string at an address
print_char	Prints the immediate character
print_num	Prints the signed number
print_obj	Prints the object's short name
print_paddr	Prints the string at a packed address

---

Object instructions	
clear_attr	Clears an object's attribute
get_child	Stores the object's first child into a variable
get_next_prop	Stores the object's property number after the given property number into a variable
get_parent	Stores the object's parent into a variable
get_prop	Stores the value of the object's property into a variable
get_prop_addr	Stores the address of the object's property into a variable
get_prop_len	Stores the byte length of the object's property into a variable
get_sibling	Stores the next sibling of the object into a variable
insert_obj	Reparents the object to the destination object
put_prop	Stores the value into the object's property

remove_obj	Detaches the object from its parent
set_attr	Sets an object's attribute
Other instructions	
nop	Does nothing
restart	Restarts the game
restore	Loads a saved game
quit	Quits the game
save	Saves the game
sread	Reads from the keyboard

### 14.1 Instruction utilities

There are a few utilities that are used in common by instructions.

illegal\_opcode hits a BRK instruction.

158

⌊Instruction illegal opcode 158⌋≡

(207)

illegal\_opcode:

SUBROUTINE

JSR       brk

Defines:

illegal\_opcode, used in chunks 109, 113b, 115a, 117b, and 119.

Uses brk 31c.

The `store_zero_and_next` routine stores the value 0 into the variable in the next byte, while `store_A_and_next` stores the value in the A register into the variable in the next byte. Finally, `store_and_next` stores the value in SCRATCH2 into the variable in the next byte.

159a  $\langle$ Store and go to next instruction 159a $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

store_zero_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    #$00

store_A_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    #$00
    STA    SCRATCH2+1

store_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    store_var
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`store_A_and_next`, used in chunks 189 and 195.  
`store_and_next`, used in chunks 125, 131, 165, 166a, 170b, 172–76, 190, and 192–94.  
`store_zero_and_next`, used in chunks 189 and 194.

Uses SCRATCH2 204, `do_instruction` 112, and `store_var` 123.

The `print_zstring_and_next` routine prints the z-encoded string at Z\_PC2 to the screen, and then goes to the next instruction.

159b  $\langle$ Print zstring and go to next instruction 159b $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

print_zstring_and_next:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    print_zstring
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`print_zstring_and_next`, used in chunks 185b and 186c.

Uses `do_instruction` 112 and `print_zstring` 62.



The `inc_var` routine increments the variable in `OPERANDO`, and also stores the result in `SCRATCH2`.

160a  $\langle \text{Increment variable 160a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
inc_var:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_get
        INCW   SCRATCH2
inc_var_continue:
        PSHW   SCRATCH2
        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_put
        PULW   SCRATCH2
        RTS
```

Defines:

`inc_var`, used in chunks 169c and 177a.

Uses `INCW` 13b, `OPERANDO` 204, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `SCRATCH2` 204, `var_get` 122, and `var_put` 124.

`dec_var` does the same thing as `inc_var`, except does a decrement.

160b  $\langle \text{Decrement variable 160b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
dec_var:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA    OPERANDO
        JSR    var_get
        SUBB   SCRATCH2, #$01
        JMP    inc_var_continue
```

Defines:

`dec_var`, used in chunks 170a and 176b.

Uses `OPERANDO` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SUBB` 16b, and `var_get` 122.

### 14.1.1 Handling branches

Branch information is stored in one or two bytes, indicating what to do with the result of the test. If bit 7 of the first byte is 0, a branch occurs when the condition was false; if 1, then branch is on true.

There are two entry points here, `branch` and `negated_branch`, which are used when the branch condition previously checked is true and false, respectively.

`branch` checks if bit 7 of the offset data is clear, and if so, does the branch, otherwise skips to the next instruction.

`negated_branch` is the same, except that it inverts the branch condition.

```
161a  <Handle branch 161a>≡ (207) 161b>
      negated_branch:
      SUBROUTINE

      JSR    get_next_code_byte
      ORA    #$00
      BMI    .do_branch
      BPL    .no_branch

      branch:
      JSR    get_next_code_byte
      ORA    #$00
      BPL    .do_branch
```

Defines:

`branch`, used in chunks 151c, 155a, 177, 178, and 180b.

`negated_branch`, used in chunks 152a, 155b, 177–81, and 188.

Uses `get_next_code_byte` 37.

If we're not branching, we check whether bit 6 is set. If so, we need to read the second byte of the offset data and throw it away. In either case, we go to the next instruction.

```
161b  <Handle branch 161a>+≡ (207) <161a 162>
      .no_branch:
      AND    #$40
      BNE    .next
      JSR    get_next_code_byte

      .next:
      JMP    do_instruction
```

Uses `do_instruction` 112 and `get_next_code_byte` 37.

With the first byte of the branch offset data in the A register, we check whether bit 6 is set. If so, the offset is (unsigned) 6 bits and we can move on, otherwise we need to tack on the next byte for a signed 14-bit offset. When we're done, SCRATCH2 will contain the signed offset.

```

162  <Handle branch 161a>+≡ (207) <161b 163a>
      .do_branch:
          TAX
          AND      #$40
          BEQ      .get_14_bit_offset

      .offset_is_6_bits:
          TXA
          AND      #$3F
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      .check_for_return_false

      .get_14_bit_offset:
          TXA
          AND      #$3F
          PHA
          JSR      get_next_code_byte
          STA      SCRATCH2
          PLA
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          AND      #$20
          BEQ      .check_for_return_false
          LDA      SCRATCH2+1
          ORA      #$C0
          STA      SCRATCH2+1

```

Uses SCRATCH2 204 and get\_next\_code\_byte 37.

An offset of 0 always means to return false from the current routine, while an offset of 1 means to return true. Otherwise, we fall through.

```

163a  <Handle branch 161a>+≡ (207) <162 163b>
      .check_for_return_false:
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          ORA    SCRATCH2
          BEQ    instr_rfalse
          LDA    SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC    #$01
          STA    SCRATCH2
          BCS    .check_for_return_true
          DEC    SCRATCH2+1

      .check_for_return_true:
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          ORA    SCRATCH2
          BEQ    instr_rtrue

```

Uses SCRATCH2 204, instr\_rfalse 183b, and instr\_rtrue 184a.

We now need to move execution to the instruction at address `Address after branch data + offset - 2`.

We subtract 1 from the offset in SCRATCH2. Note that above, we've already subtracted 1, so now we've subtracted 2 from the offset.

```

163b  <Handle branch 161a>+≡ (207) <163a 163c>
      branch_to_offset:
          SUBROUTINE

          SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01

```

Defines:

`branch_to_offset`, used in chunk 182a.

Uses SCRATCH2 204 and SUBB 16b.

Next, we store twice the high byte of SCRATCH2 into SCRATCH1.

```

163c  <Handle branch 161a>+≡ (207) <163b 164>
          LDA    SCRATCH2+1
          STA    SCRATCH1
          ASL
          LDA    #$00
          ROL
          STA    SCRATCH1+1

```

Uses SCRATCH1 204 and SCRATCH2 204.

Finally, we add the signed 16-bit `SCRATCH2` to the 24-bit `Z_PC`, and go to the next instruction. We invalidate the zcode page if we've passed a page boundary.

Interestingly, although `Z_PC` is a 24-bit address, we AND the high byte with `#$01`, meaning that the maximum `Z_PC` would be `#$01FFFF`.

```

164  <Handle branch 161a>+≡ (207) <163c
      LDA      Z_PC
      CLC
      ADC      SCRATCH2
      BCC      .continue2
      INC      SCRATCH1
      BNE      .continue2
      INC      SCRATCH1+1

      .continue2:
      STA      Z_PC
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      ORA      SCRATCH1
      BEQ      .next

      CLC
      LDA      SCRATCH1
      ADC      Z_PC+1
      STA      Z_PC+1
      LDA      SCRATCH1+1
      ADC      Z_PC+2
      AND      #$01
      STA      Z_PC+2
      LDA      #$00
      STA      ZCODE_PAGE_VALID
      JMP      do_instruction

      .next:
      JMP      do_instruction

```

Uses `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `ZCODE_PAGE_VALID` 204, `Z_PC` 204, and `do_instruction` 112.

## 14.2 Data movement instructions

### 14.2.1 load

load loads the variable in the operand into the variable in the next code byte.

165a  $\langle \text{Instruction load 165a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_load:
  SUBROUTINE

  LDA      OPERANDO
  JSR      var_get
  JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr\_load, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, store\_and\_next 159a, and var\_get 122.

### 14.2.2 loadw

loadw loads a word from the array at the address given OPERANDO, indexed by OPERAND1, into the variable in the next code byte.

165b  $\langle \text{Instruction loadw 165b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_loadw:
  SUBROUTINE

  ASL      OPERAND1          ; OPERAND1 *= 2
  ROL      OPERAND1+1
  ADDW     OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
  JSR      load_address
  JSR      get_next_code_word
  JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr\_loadw, used in chunk 109.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_next\_code\_word 45a, load\_address 45b, and store\_and\_next 159a.

### 14.2.3 loadb

loadb loads a zero-extended byte from the array at the address given OPERANDO, indexed by OPERAND1, into the variable in the next code byte.

166a     $\langle \text{Instruction loadb 166a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_loadb:
        SUBROUTINE

            ADDW    OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2    ; SCRATCH2 = OPERANDO + OPERAND1
            JSR     load_address                     ; Z_PC2 = SCRATCH2
            JSR     get_next_code_byte2              ; A = *Z_PC2
            STA     SCRATCH2                         ; SCRATCH2 = uint16(A)
            LDA     #$00
            STA     SCRATCH2+1
            JMP     store_and_next                   ; store_and_next(SCRATCH2)

```

Defines:

instr\_loadb, used in chunk 109.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_next\_code\_byte2 43, load\_address 45b, and store\_and\_next 159a.

### 14.2.4 store

store stores OPERAND1 into the variable in OPERANDO.

166b     $\langle \text{Instruction store 166b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_store:
        SUBROUTINE

            MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
            LDA     OPERANDO

            stretch_var_put:
                JSR     var_put
                JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_store, used in chunk 109.

stretch\_var\_put, used in chunk 169a.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, do\_instruction 112, and var\_put 124.

### 14.2.5 storew

storew stores OPERAND2 into the word array pointed to by z-address OPERANDO at the index OPERAND1.

167     $\langle \text{Instruction storew 167} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_storew:
    SUBROUTINE

        LDA      OPERAND1      ; SCRATCH2 = Z_HEADER_ADDR + OPERANDO + 2*OPERAND1
        ASL
        ROL      OPERAND1+1
        CLC
        ADC      OPERANDO
        STA      SCRATCH2
        LDA      OPERAND1+1
        ADC      OPERANDO+1
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        ADDW     SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
        LDY      #$00
        LDA      OPERAND2+1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        INY
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction
  
```

Defines:

instr\_storew, used in chunk 109.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, OPERAND2 204, SCRATCH2 204,  
and do\_instruction 112.



## 14.2.6 storeb

`storeb` stores the low byte of `OPERAND2` into the byte array pointed to by `z-` address `OPERANDO` at the index `OPERAND1`.

168a  $\langle \text{Instruction storeb 168a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_storeb:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERAND1      ; SCRATCH2 = Z_HEADER_ADDR + OPERANDO + OPERAND1
    CLC
    ADC    OPERANDO
    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    OPERAND1+1
    ADC    OPERANDO+1
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    ADDW   SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
    LDY    #$00
    LDA    OPERAND2
    STA    (SCRATCH2),Y
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_storeb`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `ADDW 15c`, `OPERANDO 204`, `OPERAND1 204`, `OPERAND2 204`, `SCRATCH2 204`,  
and `do_instruction 112`.

## 14.3 Stack instructions

### 14.3.1 pop

`pop` pops the stack. This throws away the popped value.

168b  $\langle \text{Instruction pop 168b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_pop:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    pop
    JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_pop`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `do_instruction 112` and `pop 36`.

### 14.3.2 pull

pull pops the top value off the stack and puts it in the variable in OPERANDO.

169a  $\langle \text{Instruction pull 169a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_pull:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop
        LDA      OPERANDO
        JMP      stretch_var_put

```

Defines:

instr\_pull, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, pop 36, and stretch\_var\_put 166b.

### 14.3.3 push

push pushes the value in OPERANDO onto the z-stack.

169b  $\langle \text{Instruction push 169b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_push:
        SUBROUTINE

        MOVW     OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
        JSR      push
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_push, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, do\_instruction 112, and push 35.

## 14.4 Decrements and increments

### 14.4.1 inc

inc increments the variable in the operand.

169c  $\langle \text{Instruction inc 169c} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_inc:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      inc_var
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_inc, used in chunk 109.

Uses do\_instruction 112 and inc\_var 160a.

### 14.4.2 dec

dec decrements the variable in the operand.

170a  $\langle \text{Instruction dec 170a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_dec:
        SUBROUTINE

            JSR      dec_var
            JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_dec, used in chunk 109.

Uses dec\_var 160b and do\_instruction 112.

## 14.5 Arithmetic instructions

### 14.5.1 add

add adds the first operand to the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte.

170b  $\langle \text{Instruction add 170b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_add:
        SUBROUTINE

            ADDW      OPERANDO, OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
            JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_add, used in chunk 109.

Uses ADDW 15c, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, and store\_and\_next 159a.

### 14.5.2 div

div divides the first operand by the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for dividing by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other divides, divu16 is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

```

171  <Instruction div 171>≡ (207)
      instr_div:
          SUBROUTINE

              MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
              MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
              JSR      check_sign
              LDA      SCRATCH1+1
              BNE      .do_div
              LDA      SCRATCH1
              CMP      #$02
              BEQ      .shortcut_div2
              CMP      #$04
              BEQ      .shortcut_div4

          .do_div:
              JSR      divu16
              JMP      stretch_set_sign

          .shortcut_div4:
              LSR      SCRATCH2+1
              ROR      SCRATCH2

          .shortcut_div2:
              LSR      SCRATCH2+1
              ROR      SCRATCH2
              JMP      stretch_set_sign

```

Defines:

instr\_div, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, check\_sign 96a, and divu16 100.

### 14.5.3 mod

`mod` divides the first operand by the second operand and stores the remainder in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for dividing by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other divides, `divu16` is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

172     $\langle \textit{Instruction mod 172} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_mod:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     check_sign
    JSR     divu16
    MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
    JMP     store_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_mod`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 204`, `OPERAND1 204`, `SCRATCH1 204`, `SCRATCH2 204`, `check_sign 96a`, `divu16 100`, and `store_and_next 159a`.

### 14.5.4 mul

mul multiplies the first operand by the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte. There are optimizations for multiplying by 2 and 4 (which are just shifts). For all other multiplies, mulu16 is called, and then the sign is adjusted afterwards.

173    *<Instruction mul 173>*≡ (207)

```

instr_mul:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     check_sign
    LDA     SCRATCH1+1
    BNE     .do_mult
    LDA     SCRATCH1
    CMP     #$02
    BEQ     .shortcut_x2
    CMP     #$04
    BEQ     .shortcut_x4

.do_mult:
    JSR     mulu16

stretch_set_sign:
    JSR     set_sign
    JMP     store_and_next

.shortcut_x4:
    ASL     SCRATCH2
    ROL     SCRATCH2+1

.shortcut_x2:
    ASL     SCRATCH2
    ROL     SCRATCH2+1
    JMP     stretch_set_sign

```

Defines:

instr\_mul, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, check\_sign 96a, mulu16 97, set\_sign 96b, and store\_and\_next 159a.

### 14.5.5 random

**random** gets a random number between 1 and OPERANDO.

174a     $\langle \text{Instruction random 174a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           **instr\_random:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH1
JSR      get_random
JSR      divu16
MOVW    SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
INCW    SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

**instr\_random**, used in chunk 109.

Uses INCW 13b, MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, divu16 100, get\_random 174b, and store\_and\_next 159a.

174b     $\langle \text{Get random 174b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           **get\_random:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

ROL      RANDOM_VAL+1
MOVW    RANDOM_VAL, SCRATCH2
RTS

```

Defines:

**get\_random**, used in chunk 174a.

Uses MOVW 12a and SCRATCH2 204.

### 14.5.6 sub

**sub** subtracts the first operand from the second operand and stores the result in the variable in the next code byte.

174c     $\langle \text{Instruction sub 174c} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           **instr\_sub:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

SUBW    OPERAND1, OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

**instr\_sub**, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, SUBW 17b, and store\_and\_next 159a.

## 14.6 Logical instructions

### 14.6.1 and

**and** bitwise-ands the first operand with the second operand and stores the result in the variable given by the next code byte.

175a  $\langle \text{Instruction and 175a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_and:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERAND1+1
    AND    OPERANDO+1
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    LDA    OPERAND1
    AND    OPERANDO
    STA    SCRATCH2
    JMP    store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_and, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, and store\_and\_next 159a.

### 14.6.2 not

**not** flips every bit in the variable in the operand and stores it in the variable in the next code byte.

175b  $\langle \text{Instruction not 175b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_not:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA    OPERANDO
    EOR    #$FF
    STA    SCRATCH2
    LDA    OPERANDO+1
    EOR    #$FF
    STA    SCRATCH2+1
    JMP    store_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_not, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, and store\_and\_next 159a.



### 14.6.3 or

or bitwise-ors the first operand with the second operand and stores the result in the variable given by the next code byte.

176a  $\langle \text{Instruction or 176a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_or:
SUBROUTINE

LDA      OPERAND1+1
ORA      OPERANDO+1
STA      SCRATCH2+1
LDA      OPERAND1
ORA      OPERANDO
STA      SCRATCH2
JMP      store_and_next
```

Defines:

instr\_or, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, and store\_and\_next 159a.

## 14.7 Conditional branch instructions

### 14.7.1 dec\_chk

dec\_chk decrements the variable in the first operand, and then jumps if it is less than the second operand.

176b  $\langle \text{Instruction dec chk 176b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_dec_chk:
SUBROUTINE

JSR      dec_var
MOVW     OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
JMP      do_chk
```

Defines:

instr\_dec\_chk, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, dec\_var 160b, and do\_chk 177a.

### 14.7.2 inc\_chk

`inc_chk` increments the variable in the first operand, and then jumps if it is greater than the second operand.

177a  $\langle \text{Instruction } inc\_chk \text{ 177a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_inc_chk:
    JSR      inc_var
    MOVW     SCRATCH2, SCRATCH1
    MOVW     OPERAND1, SCRATCH2

do_chk:
    JSR      cmp16
    BCC      stretch_to_branch
    JMP      negated_branch

stretch_to_branch:
    JMP      branch

```

Defines:

`do_chk`, used in chunk 176b.

`instr_inc_chk`, used in chunk 109.

`stretch_to_branch`, used in chunks 179–81.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERAND1 204`, `SCRATCH1 204`, `SCRATCH2 204`, `branch 161a`, `cmp16 101b`, `inc_var 160a`, and `negated_branch 161a`.

### 14.7.3 je

`je` jumps if the first operand is equal to any of the next operands. However, in negative node (`jne`), we jump if the first operand is not equal to any of the next operands.

First, we check that there is at least one operand, and if not, we hit a `BRK`.

177b  $\langle \text{Instruction } je \text{ 177b} \rangle \equiv$  (207) 178a>

```

instr_je:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDX      OPERAND_COUNT
    DEX
    BNE      .check_second
    JSR      brk

```

Defines:

`instr_je`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OPERAND_COUNT 204` and `brk 31c`.

Next, we check against the second operand, and if it's equal, we branch, and if that was the last operand, we negative branch.

```
178a  <Instruction je 177b>+≡ (207) <177b 178b>
      .check_second:
          LDA     OPERANDO
          CMP     OPERAND1
          BNE     .check_next
          LDA     OPERANDO+1
          CMP     OPERAND1+1
          BEQ     .branch

      .check_next:
          DEX
          BEQ     .neg_branch
Uses OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, and branch 161a.
```

Next we do the same with the third operand.

```
178b  <Instruction je 177b>+≡ (207) <178a 178c>
      LDA     OPERANDO
      CMP     OPERANDO+4
      BNE     .check_next2
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      CMP     OPERANDO+5
      BEQ     .branch

      .check_next2:
          DEX
          BEQ     .neg_branch
Uses OPERANDO 204 and branch 161a.
```

And again with the fourth operand.

```
178c  <Instruction je 177b>+≡ (207) <178b
      LDA     OPERANDO
      CMP     OPERANDO+6
      BNE     .check_second      ; why not just go to .neg_branch?
      LDA     OPERANDO+1
      CMP     OPERANDO+7
      BEQ     .branch

      .neg_branch:
          JMP     negated_branch

      .branch:
          JMP     branch
Uses OPERANDO 204, branch 161a, and negated_branch 161a.
```

### 14.7.4 jg

jg jumps if the first operand is greater than the second operand, in a signed comparison. In negative mode (jle), we jump if the first operand is less than or equal to the second operand.

179a  $\langle \text{Instruction } jg \text{ 179a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_jg:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH1
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
    JSR     cmp16
    BCC     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jg, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, cmp16 101b, negated\_branch 161a, and stretch\_to\_branch 177a.

### 14.7.5 jin

jin jumps if the first operand is a child object of the second operand.

179b  $\langle \text{Instruction } jin \text{ 179b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_jin:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     OPERANDO
    JSR     get_object_addr
    LDY     #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
    LDA     OPERAND1
    CMP     (SCRATCH2),Y
    BEQ     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jin, used in chunk 109.

Uses OBJECT\_PARENT\_OFFSET 206a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH2 204, get\_object\_addr 132, negated\_branch 161a, and stretch\_to\_branch 177a.

### 14.7.6 jl

jl jumps if the first operand is less than the second operand, in a signed comparison. In negative mode (jge), we jump if the first operand is greater than or equal to the second operand.

180a  $\langle \text{Instruction jl 180a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_jl:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    MOVW    OPERAND1, SCRATCH1
    JSR     cmp16
    BCC     stretch_to_branch
    JMP     negated_branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jl, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, cmp16 101b, negated\_branch 161a, and stretch\_to\_branch 177a.

### 14.7.7 jz

jz jumps if its operand is 0.

This also includes a “stretchy jump” for other instructions that need to branch.

180b  $\langle \text{Instruction jz 180b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
instr_jz:
    SUBROUTINE

    LDA     OPERANDO+1
    ORA     OPERANDO
    BEQ     take_branch
    JMP     negated_branch

take_branch:
    JMP     branch
```

Defines:

instr\_jz, used in chunk 109.

take\_branch, used in chunk 188.

Uses OPERANDO 204, branch 161a, and negated\_branch 161a.

### 14.7.8 test

**test** jumps if all the bits in the first operand are set in the second operand.

**181a**     $\langle \text{Instruction test 181a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           **instr\_test:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

MOVb    OPERAND1+1, SCRATCH2+1
AND      OPERAND0+1
STA      SCRATCH1+1
MOVb    OPERAND1, SCRATCH2
AND      OPERAND0
STA      SCRATCH1
JSR      cmpu16
BEQ      stretch_to_branch
JMP      negated_branch

```

Defines:

**instr\_test**, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVb 11b, OPERAND0 204, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, cmpu16 101a,  
     negated\_branch 161a, and stretch\_to\_branch 177a.

### 14.7.9 test\_attr

**test\_attr** jumps if the object in the first operand has the attribute number in the second operand set. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-anding them together. If the result is nonzero, the attribute is set.

**181b**     $\langle \text{Instruction test attr 181b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           **instr\_test\_attr:**  
           SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
LDA      SCRATCH1+1
AND      SCRATCH3+1
STA      SCRATCH1+1
LDA      SCRATCH1
AND      SCRATCH3
ORA      SCRATCH1+1
BNE      stretch_to_branch
JMP      negated_branch

```

Defines:

**instr\_test\_attr**, used in chunk 109.

Uses SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH3 204, attr\_ptr\_and\_mask 138, negated\_branch 161a,  
     and stretch\_to\_branch 177a.

## 14.8 Jump and subroutine instructions

### 14.8.1 call

`call` calls the routine at the given address. This instruction has been described in [Call](#).

### 14.8.2 jump

`jump` jumps relative to the signed operand. We subtract 1 from the operand so that we can call `branch_to_offset`, which does another decrement. Thus, the address to go to is the address after this instruction, plus the operand, minus 2.

182a  $\langle \text{Instruction jump 182a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_jump:
    SUBROUTINE

    MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
    SUBB    SCRATCH2, #$01
    JMP     branch_to_offset

```

Defines:

`instr_jump`, used in chunk [109](#).

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 204`, `SCRATCH2 204`, `SUBB 16b`, and `branch_to_offset 163b`.

### 14.8.3 print\_ret

`print_ret` is the same as `print`, except that it prints a CRLF after the string, and then calls the `rtrue` instruction.

182b  $\langle \text{Instruction print ret 182b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_print_ret:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR     print_string_literal
    LDA     #$0D
    JSR     buffer_char
    LDA     #$0A
    JSR     buffer_char
    JMP     instr_rtrue

```

Defines:

`instr_print_ret`, used in chunk [109](#).

Uses `buffer_char 57` and `instr_rtrue 184a`.

### 14.8.4 ret

`ret` returns from a routine. The operand is the return value. This instruction has been described in [Return](#).

### 14.8.5 ret\_popped

`ret_popped` pops the stack and returns that value.

183a  $\langle \text{Instruction } \textit{ret popped 183a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_ret_popped:
        SUBROUTINE

        JSR      pop
        MOVW     SCRATCH2, OPERANDO
        JMP      instr_ret

```

Defines:

`instr_ret_popped`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `MOVW 12a`, `OPERANDO 204`, `SCRATCH2 204`, `instr_ret 129`, and `pop 36`.

### 14.8.6 rfalse

`rfalse` places `#$0000` into `OPERANDO`, and then calls the `ret` instruction.

183b  $\langle \text{Instruction } \textit{rfalse 183b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_rfalse:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA      #$00
        JMP      ret_a

```

Defines:

`instr_rfalse`, used in chunks 109 and 163a.

Uses `ret_a 184a`.



### 14.8.7 rtrue

rtrue places #\$0001 into OPERANDO, and then calls the ret instruction.

184a  $\langle$ Instruction rtrue 184a $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_rtrue:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    #$01
ret_a:
            STA    OPERANDO
            LDA    #$00
            STA    OPERANDO+1
            JMP    instr_ret

```

Defines:

instr\_rtrue, used in chunks 109, 163a, and 182b.

ret\_a, used in chunk 183b.

Uses OPERANDO 204 and instr\_ret 129.

## 14.9 Print instructions

### 14.9.1 new\_line

new\_line prints CRLF.

184b  $\langle$ Instruction new line 184b $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_new_line:
        SUBROUTINE

            LDA    #$0D
            JSR    buffer_char
            LDA    #$0A
            JSR    buffer_char
            JMP    do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_new\_line, used in chunk 109.

Uses buffer\_char 57 and do\_instruction 112.

### 14.9.2 print

`print` treats the following bytes of z-code as a z-encoded string, and prints it to the output.

185a     $\langle \text{Instruction print 185a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_print:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          JSR     `print_string_literal`  
           JMP     `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_print`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `do_instruction` 112.

### 14.9.3 print\_addr

`print_addr` prints the z-encoded string at the address given by the operand.

185b     $\langle \text{Instr print addr 185b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_print_addr:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          MOVW    `OPERANDO, SCRATCH2`  
           JSR     `load_address`  
           JMP     `print_zstring_and_next`

Defines:

`instr_print_addr`, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, `load_address` 45b, and `print_zstring_and_next` 159b.

### 14.9.4 print\_char

`print_char` prints the one-byte ASCII character in OPERANDO.

185c     $\langle \text{Instruction print char 185c} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_print_char:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          LDA     `OPERANDO`  
           JSR     `buffer_char`  
           JMP     `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_print_char`, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, `buffer_char` 57, and `do_instruction` 112.

### 14.9.5 print\_num

print\_num prints the 16-bit signed value in OPERANDO as a decimal number.

186a  $\langle$ Instruction print num 186a $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_print_num:
        SUBROUTINE

        MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2
        JSR     print_number
        JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_print\_num, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, do\_instruction 112, and print\_number 103.

### 14.9.6 print\_obj

print\_obj prints the short name of the object in the operand.

186b  $\langle$ Instruction print obj 186b $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_print_obj:
        SUBROUTINE

        LDA     OPERANDO
        JSR     print_obj_in_A
        JMP     do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_print\_obj, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERANDO 204, do\_instruction 112, and print\_obj\_in\_A 137.

### 14.9.7 print\_paddr

print\_paddr prints the z-encoded string at the packed address in the operand.

186c  $\langle$ Instruction print paddr 186c $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

    instr_print_paddr:
        SUBROUTINE

        MOVW    OPERANDO, SCRATCH2    ; Z_PC2 <- OPERANDO * 2
        JSR     load_packed_address

        ; Falls through to print_zstring_and_next

```

Defines:

instr\_print\_paddr, used in chunk 109.

Uses MOVW 12a, OPERANDO 204, SCRATCH2 204, load\_packed\_address 46, and print\_zstring\_and\_next 159b.

## 14.10 Object instructions

### 14.10.1 clear\_attr

`clear_attr` clears the attribute number in the second operand for the object in the first operand. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-anding the inverse of the mask with the attribute word, and storing the result.

187     $\langle \text{Instruction clear attr 187} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
       `instr_clear_attr:`  
       SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
LDY      #$01
LDA      SCRATCH3
EOR      #$FF
AND      SCRATCH1
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
DEY
LDA      SCRATCH3+1
EOR      #$FF
AND      SCRATCH1+1
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
JMP      do_instruction
```

Defines:

`instr_clear_attr`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, `attr_ptr_and_mask` 138,  
       and `do_instruction` 112.

### 14.10.2 get\_child

`get_child` gets the first child object of the object in the operand, stores it into the variable in the next code byte, and branches if it exists (i.e. is not 0).

```
188  <Instruction get_child 188>≡ (207)
      instr_get_child:
          LDA      OPERANDO
          JSR      get_object_addr
          LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET

      push_and_check_obj:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          PHA
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JSR      store_var      ; store in var of next code byte.
          PLA
          ORA      #$00
          BNE      take_branch
          JMP      negated_branch
```

Defines:

`push_and_check_obj`, used in chunk 196.

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 206a, `OPERANDO` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `get_object_addr` 132, `negated_branch` 161a, `store_var` 123, and `take_branch` 180b.

### 14.10.3 get\_next\_prop

`get_next_prop` gets the next property number for the object in the first operand after the property number in the second operand, and stores it in the variable in the next code byte. If there is no next property, zero is stored.

If the property number in the second operand is zero, the first property number of the object is returned.

189 *<Instruction get next prop 189>*≡ (207)

```

instr_get_next_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR    get_property_ptr
        LDA    OPERAND1
        BEQ    .store

    .loop:
        JSR    get_property_num
        CMP    OPERAND1
        BEQ    .found
        BCS    .continue
        JMP    store_zero_and_next

    .continue:
        JSR    next_property
        JMP    .loop

    .store:
        JSR    get_property_num
        JMP    store_A_and_next

    .found:
        JSR    next_property
        JMP    .store

```

Defines:

`instr_get_next_prop`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OPERAND1` 204, `get_property_num` 141a, `get_property_ptr` 140, `next_property` 142, `store_A_and_next` 159a, and `store_zero_and_next` 159a.

#### 14.10.4 get\_parent

`get_parent` gets the parent object of the object in the operand, and stores it into the variable in the next code byte.

190     $\langle$ *Instruction get parent 190* $\rangle \equiv$  (207)  
      `instr_get_parent:`  
      SUBROUTINE

```
      LDA    OPERANDO
      JSR    get_object_addr
      LDY    #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
      LDA    (SCRATCH2),Y
      STA    SCRATCH2
      LDA    #$00
      STA    SCRATCH2+1
      JSR    store_and_next
```

Defines:

`instr_get_parent`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 206a, `OPERANDO` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `get_object_addr` 132,  
and `store_and_next` 159a.

### 14.10.5 get\_prop

`get_prop` gets the property number in the second operand for the object in the first operand, and stores the value of the property in the variable in the next code byte. If the object doesn't have the property, the default value for the property is used. If the property length is 1, then the byte is zero-extended and stored. If the property length is 2, then the entire word is stored. If the property length is anything else, we hit a BRK.

First, we check to see if the property is in the object's properties.

191  $\langle$ Instruction *get prop* 191 $\rangle \equiv$  (207) 192 $\triangleright$

```
instr_get_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

    JSR    get_property_ptr

.loop:
    JSR    get_property_num
    CMP    OPERAND1
    BEQ    .found
    BCC    .get_default
    JSR    next_property
    JMP    .loop
```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OPERAND1` 204, `get_property_num` 141a, `get_property_ptr` 140, and `next_property` 142.



To get the default value, we look in the beginning of the object table, and index into the word containing the property default. Then we store it and we're done.

```

192  <Instruction get prop 191>+≡ (207) <191 193>
      .get_default:
        LDY      #HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET
        CLC
        LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR
        STA      SCRATCH1
        DEY
        LDA      (Z_HEADER_ADDR),Y
        ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
        STA      SCRATCH1+1          ; table_ptr
        LDA      OPERAND1           ; SCRATCH2 <- table_ptr[2*OPERAND1]
        ASL
        TAY
        DEY
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2
        DEY
        LDA      (SCRATCH1),Y
        STA      SCRATCH2+1
        JMP      store_and_next

```

Uses HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET 206a, OPERAND1 204, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, and store\_and\_next 159a.

If the property was found, we load the zero-extended byte or the word, depending on the property length. Also if the property length is not valid, we hit a BRK.

```

193  <Instruction get prop 191>+≡ (207) <192
      .found:
          JSR      get_property_len
          INY
          CMP      #$00
          BEQ      .byte_prop
          CMP      #$01
          BEQ      .word_prop
          JSR      brk

      .word_prop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1+1
          INY
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH1
          MOVW     SCRATCH1, SCRATCH2
          JMP      store_and_next

      .byte_prop:
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      #$00
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          JMP      store_and_next

```

Uses MOVW 12a, SCRATCH1 204, SCRATCH2 204, brk 31c, get\_property\_len 141b, and store\_and\_next 159a.

### 14.10.6 get\_prop\_addr

`get_prop_addr` gets the Z-address of the property number in the second operand for the object in the first operand, and stores it in the variable in the next code byte. If the object does not have the property, zero is stored.

```

194  <Instruction get prop addr 194>≡ (207)
      instr_get_prop_addr:
          SUBROUTINE

              JSR      get_property_ptr

          .loop:
              JSR      get_property_num
              CMP      OPERAND1
              BEQ      .found
              BCS      .next
              JMP      store_zero_and_next

          .next:
              JSR      next_property
              JMP      .loop

          .found:
              INCW     SCRATCH2
              CLC
              TYA
              ADDAC     SCRATCH2
              SUBW      SCRATCH2, Z_HEADER_ADDR, SCRATCH2
              JMP      store_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop_addr`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `ADDAC` 14b, `INCW` 13b, `OPERAND1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SUBW` 17b, `get_property_num` 141a, `get_property_ptr` 140, `next_property` 142, `store_and_next` 159a, and `store_zero_and_next` 159a.

### 14.10.7 get\_prop\_len

`get_prop_len` gets the length of the property data for the property address in the operand, and stores it into the variable in the next code byte. The address in the operand is relative to the start of the header, and points to the property data. The property's one-byte length is stored at that address minus one.

```

195  <Instruction get prop len 195>≡ (207)
      instr_get_prop_len:
          CLC
          LDA      OPERANDO
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR
          STA      SCRATCH2
          LDA      OPERANDO+1
          ADC      Z_HEADER_ADDR+1
          STA      SCRATCH2+1
          LDA      SCRATCH2
          SEC
          SBC      #$01
          STA      SCRATCH2
          BCS      .continue
          DEC      SCRATCH2+1

      .continue:
          LDY      #$00
          JSR      get_property_len
          CLC
          ADC      #$01
          JMP      store_A_and_next

```

Defines:

`instr_get_prop_len`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OPERANDO` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `get_property_len` 141b, and `store_A_and_next` 159a.

### 14.10.8 get\_sibling

`get_sibling` gets the next object of the object in the operand (its “sibling”), stores it into the variable in the next code byte, and branches if it exists (i.e. is not 0).

196     $\langle \textit{Instruction get sibling 196} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
          `instr_get_sibling:`  
          SUBROUTINE

```

LDA      OPERANDO
JSR      get_object_addr
LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET
JMP      push_and_check_obj
```

Defines:

`instr_get_sibling`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET` 206a, `OPERANDO` 204, `get_object_addr` 132,  
and `push_and_check_obj` 188.

### 14.10.9 insert\_obj

`insert_obj` inserts the object in `OPERANDO` as a child of the object in `OPERAND1`. It becomes the first child in the object.

```

197  <Instruction insert_obj 197>≡ (207)
      instr_insert_obj:
          JSR      remove_obj          ; remove_obj<OPERANDO>
          LDA      OPERANDO
          JSR      get_object_addr      ; obj_ptr = get_object_addr<OPERANDO>
          PSHW     SCRATCH2
          LDY      #OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET
          LDA      OPERAND1
          STA      (SCRATCH2),Y         ; obj_ptr->parent = OPERAND1
          JSR      get_object_addr      ; dest_ptr = get_object_addr<OPERAND1>
          LDY      #OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET ; tmp = dest_ptr->child
          LDA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          TAX
          LDA      OPERANDO             ; dest_ptr->child = OPERANDO
          STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
          PULW     SCRATCH2
          TXA
          BEQ      .continue
          LDY      #OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET ; obj_ptr->sibling = tmp
          STA      (SCRATCH2),Y

      .continue:
          JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_insert_obj`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET` 206a, `OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET` 206a, `OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET` 206a, `OPERANDO` 204, `OPERAND1` 204, `PSHW` 12b, `PULW` 13a, `SCRATCH2` 204, `do_instruction` 112, `get_object_addr` 132, and `remove_obj` 134a.

### 14.10.10 put\_prop

put\_prop stores the value in OPERAND2 into property number OPERAND1 in object OPERAND0. The property must exist, and must be of length 1 or 2, otherwise a BRK is hit.

198     $\langle \text{Instruction put prop 198} \rangle \equiv$  (207)

```

instr_put_prop:
    SUBROUTINE

        JSR      get_property_ptr

    .loop:
        JSR      get_property_num
        CMP      OPERAND1
        BEQ      .found
        BCS      .continue
        JSR      brk

    .continue:
        JSR      next_property
        JMP      .loop

    .found:
        JSR      get_property_len
        INY
        CMP      #$00
        BEQ      .byte_property
        CMP      #$01
        BEQ      .word_property
        JSR      brk

    .word_property:
        LDA      OPERAND2+1
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        INY
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

    .byte_property:
        LDA      OPERAND2
        STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
        JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

instr\_put\_prop, used in chunk 109.

Uses OPERAND1 204, OPERAND2 204, SCRATCH2 204, brk 31c, do\_instruction 112,  
get\_property\_len 141b, get\_property\_num 141a, get\_property\_ptr 140,  
and next\_property 142.

### 14.10.11 remove\_obj

`remove_obj` removes the object in the operand from the object tree.

199a     $\langle \text{Instruction remove obj 199a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_remove_obj:`  
           SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      remove_obj
JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_remove_obj`, used in chunk 109.  
 Uses `do_instruction` 112 and `remove_obj` 134a.

### 14.10.12 set\_attr

`set_attr` sets the attribute number in the second operand for the object in the first operand. This is done by getting the attribute word and mask for the attribute number, and then bitwise-oring them together, and storing the result.

199b     $\langle \text{Instruction set attr 199b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_set_attr:`  
           SUBROUTINE

```

JSR      attr_ptr_and_mask
LDY      #$01
LDA      SCRATCH1
ORA      SCRATCH3
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
DEY
LDA      SCRATCH1+1
ORA      SCRATCH3+1
STA      (SCRATCH2),Y
JMP      do_instruction

```

Defines:

`instr_set_attr`, used in chunk 109.  
 Uses `SCRATCH1` 204, `SCRATCH2` 204, `SCRATCH3` 204, `attr_ptr_and_mask` 138,  
 and `do_instruction` 112.



## 14.11 Other instructions

### 14.11.1 nop

`nop` does nothing.

**200a**     $\langle \textit{Instruction nop 200a} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_nop:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          JMP        `do_instruction`

Defines:

`instr_nop`, used in chunk **109**.

Uses `do_instruction` **112**.

### 14.11.2 restart

`restart` restarts the game. This dumps the buffer, and then jumps back to `main`.

**200b**     $\langle \textit{Instruction restart 200b} \rangle \equiv$  (207)  
           `instr_restart:`  
           SUBROUTINE

          JSR        `dump_buffer_with_more`

          JMP        `main`

Defines:

`instr_restart`, used in chunk **109**.

Uses `dump_buffer_with_more` **54** and `main` **26a**.

### 14.11.3 restore

`restore` restores the game. See the section [Restoring the game state](#).

### 14.11.4 quit

`quit` quits the game by printing “-- END OF SESSION --” and then spinlooping.

```

201  <Instruction quit 201>≡ (207)
      sEndOfSession:
          DC          "-- END OF SESSION --"

      instr_quit:
          SUBROUTINE

          JSR         dump_buffer_with_more
          STOW        sEndOfSession, SCRATCH2
          LDX         #20
          JSR         print_ascii_string
          JSR         dump_buffer_with_more

      .spinloop:
          JMP         .spinloop

```

Defines:

`instr_quit`, used in chunk 109.

Uses `SCRATCH2` 204, `STOW` 10, `dump_buffer_with_more` 54, and `print_ascii_string` 59b.

### 14.11.5 save

`save` saves the game. See the section [Saving the game state](#).

### 14.11.6 sread

`sread` reads a line of input from the keyboard and parses it. See the section [Lexical parsing](#).

## Chapter 15

# The entire program

**202a**     $\langle \textit{main.asm 202a} \rangle \equiv$   
          PROCESSOR 6502

$\langle \textit{Macros 10} \rangle$   
           $\langle \textit{defines 202b} \rangle$   
           $\langle \textit{routines 207} \rangle$

**202b**     $\langle \textit{defines 202b} \rangle \equiv$  (202a)  
           $\langle \textit{Apple ROM defines 203} \rangle$   
           $\langle \textit{Program defines 204} \rangle$   
           $\langle \textit{Table offsets 206a} \rangle$   
           $\langle \textit{variable numbers 206b} \rangle$

```

203  (Apple ROM defines 203)≡ (202b)
      WNDLFT      EQU      $20
      WNDWDTH     EQU      $21
      WNDTOP      EQU      $22
      WNDBTM      EQU      $23
      CH          EQU      $24
      CV          EQU      $25
      IWMDATAPTR  EQU      $26      ; IWM pointer to write disk data to
      IWMSLTNDX   EQU      $2B      ; IWM Slot times 16
      INVFLG      EQU      $32
      PROMPT      EQU      $33
      CSW         EQU      $36      ; 2 bytes

      ; Details https://6502disassembly.com/a2-rom/APPLE2.ROM.html
      IWMSECTOR   EQU      $3D      ; IWM sector to read
      RDSECT_PTR  EQU      $3E      ; 2 bytes
      RANDOM_VAL  EQU      $4E      ; 2 bytes

      INIT        EQU      $FB2F
      VTAB        EQU      $FC22
      HOME        EQU      $FC58
      CLREOL      EQU      $FC9C
      RDKEY       EQU      $FDOC
      GETLN1      EQU      $FD6F
      COUT        EQU      $FDED
      COUT1       EQU      $FDF0
      SETVID      EQU      $FE93
      SETKBD      EQU      $FE89

```

Defines:

CH, used in chunks 54, 69, and 145.  
 CLREOL, used in chunks 54, 69, and 145.  
 COUT, used in chunks 51 and 55b.  
 COUT1, used in chunks 47, 50, and 55a.  
 CSW, used in chunks 51 and 55b.  
 CV, used in chunk 69.  
 GETLN1, used in chunk 71.  
 HOME, used in chunk 48.  
 INIT, used in chunks 23 and 24.  
 INVFLG, used in chunks 49, 54, 69, and 145.  
 IWMDATAPTR, used in chunks 21a, 22e, and 24.  
 IWMSECTOR, used in chunks 22c and 24.  
 IWMSLTNDX, used in chunks 21–24.  
 PROMPT, used in chunk 49.  
 RDKEY, used in chunks 54, 145, 147a, and 148.  
 RDSECT\_PTR, used in chunks 20c, 21b, and 24.  
 SETKBD, used in chunks 23 and 24.  
 SETVID, used in chunks 23 and 24.  
 VTAB, used in chunk 69.  
 WNDBTM, used in chunks 49 and 54.  
 WNDLFT, used in chunk 49.  
 WNDTOP, used in chunks 48, 49, 54, and 71.  
 WNDWDTH, used in chunks 49, 55a, and 57–59.

204    *(Program defines 204)*≡ (202b)

DEBUG_JUMP	EQU	\$7C	; 3 bytes
SECTORS_PER_TRACK	EQU	\$7F	
CURR_OPCODE	EQU	\$80	
OPERAND_COUNT	EQU	\$81	
OPERAND0	EQU	\$82	; 2 bytes
OPERAND1	EQU	\$84	; 2 bytes
OPERAND2	EQU	\$86	; 2 bytes
OPERAND3	EQU	\$88	; 2 bytes
Z_PC	EQU	\$8A	; 3 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR	EQU	\$8D	; 2 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID	EQU	\$8F	
PAGE_TABLE_INDEX	EQU	\$90	
Z_PC2_H	EQU	\$91	
Z_PC2_HH	EQU	\$92	
Z_PC2_L	EQU	\$93	
ZCODE_PAGE_ADDR2	EQU	\$94	; 2 bytes
ZCODE_PAGE_VALID2	EQU	\$96	
PAGE_TABLE_INDEX2	EQU	\$97	
GLOBAL_ZVARS_ADDR	EQU	\$98	; 2 bytes
LOCAL_ZVARS	EQU	\$9A	; 30 bytes
AFTER_Z_IMAGE_ADDR	EQU	\$B8	
Z_HEADER_ADDR	EQU	\$BA	; 2 bytes
NUM_IMAGE_PAGES	EQU	\$BC	
FIRST_Z_PAGE	EQU	\$BD	
LAST_Z_PAGE	EQU	\$BF	
PAGE_L_TABLE	EQU	\$C0	; 2 bytes
PAGE_H_TABLE	EQU	\$C2	; 2 bytes
NEXT_PAGE_TABLE	EQU	\$C4	; 2 bytes
PREV_PAGE_TABLE	EQU	\$C6	; 2 bytes
STACK_COUNT	EQU	\$C8	
Z_SP	EQU	\$C9	; 2 bytes
FRAME_Z_SP	EQU	\$CB	; 2 bytes
FRAME_STACK_COUNT	EQU	\$CD	
SHIFT_ALPHABET	EQU	\$CE	
LOCKED_ALPHABET	EQU	\$CF	
ZDECOMPRESS_STATE	EQU	\$D0	
ZCHARS_L	EQU	\$D1	
ZCHARS_H	EQU	\$D2	
ZCHAR_SCRATCH1	EQU	\$D3	; 6 bytes
ZCHAR_SCRATCH2	EQU	\$DA	; 6 bytes
TOKEN_IDX	EQU	\$E0	
INPUT_PTR	EQU	\$E1	
Z_ABBREV_TABLE	EQU	\$E2	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH1	EQU	\$E4	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH2	EQU	\$E6	; 2 bytes
SCRATCH3	EQU	\$E8	; 2 bytes
SIGN_BIT	EQU	\$EA	
BUFF_END	EQU	\$EB	
BUFF_LINE_LEN	EQU	\$EC	

<b>CURR_LINE</b>	EQU	\$ED	
<b>PRINTER_CSW</b>	EQU	\$EE	; 2 bytes
<b>TMP_Z_PC</b>	EQU	\$F0	; 3 bytes
<b>BUFF_AREA</b>	EQU	\$0200	
<b>RWTS</b>	EQU	\$2900	

Defines:

AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR, used in chunks 33a, 40, and 43.  
 BUFF\_AREA, used in chunks 50, 51, 57–59, 71, 107, 108, 149b, 150a, 152c, and 153c.  
 BUFF\_END, used in chunks 50, 51, 55a, 57–59, and 71.  
 BUFF\_LINE\_LEN, used in chunks 58b and 59a.  
 CURR\_DISK\_BUFF\_ADDR, never used.  
 CURR\_LINE, used in chunks 48, 54, and 71.  
 CURR\_OPCODE, used in chunks 112, 115–17, and 119.  
 DEBUG\_JUMP, used in chunk 111.  
 FIRST\_Z\_PAGE, used in chunks 28b, 33b, 41, and 42.  
 FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT, used in chunks 126a and 128–30.  
 FRAME\_Z\_SP, used in chunks 126a and 128–30.  
 GLOBAL\_ZVARS\_ADDR, used in chunks 32, 121, and 123.  
 LAST\_Z\_PAGE, used in chunks 28b, 33b, 41, and 42.  
 LOCAL\_ZVARS, used in chunks 121, 123, 127, 128a, 130b, 150b, and 153b.  
 LOCKED\_ALPHABET, used in chunks 60, 62, 64, 65, 81, 82b, 84a, and 86.  
 NEXT\_PAGE\_TABLE, used in chunks 27, 28a, 33b, and 42.  
 NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES, used in chunks 30, 33a, 38, and 43.  
 OPERAND0, used in chunks 71, 73, 75b, 76a, 79, 114d, 116a, 118, 125, 126b, 128a, 131, 134–36, 138, 140, 160, 165–76, 178–86, 188, 190, and 195–97.  
 OPERAND1, used in chunks 73–75, 77, 78, 116b, 138, 165–68, 170–81, 189, 191, 192, 194, 197, and 198.  
 OPERAND2, used in chunks 167, 168a, and 198.  
 OPERAND3, never used.  
 OPERAND\_COUNT, used in chunks 112, 114d, 117a, 118, 128a, and 177b.  
 PAGE\_H\_TABLE, used in chunks 27, 28a, 40, 41, and 43.  
 PAGE\_L\_TABLE, used in chunks 27, 28a, 40, 41, and 43.  
 PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX, used in chunks 38, 40, and 43.  
 PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2, used in chunks 40 and 43.  
 PREV\_PAGE\_TABLE, used in chunks 27, 28a, and 42.  
 PRINTER\_CSW, used in chunks 27, 51, and 55b.  
 RWTS, used in chunk 106.  
 SCRATCH1, used in chunks 29b, 30, 40, 43, 78, 81–84, 86, 87, 89, 91–94, 96a, 97, 100, 101, 103, 106–108, 111, 121, 123, 128a, 130, 135–40, 147b, 163c, 164, 171–74, 176b, 177a, 179–81, 187, 192, 193, and 199b.  
 SCRATCH2, used in chunks 29b, 30, 34–36, 38, 40–43, 45–47, 54, 59b, 61, 65, 69, 80–83, 90–97, 100, 101, 103, 106–108, 111, 113–21, 123–28, 130–41, 143, 145, 147–51, 153, 154, 159, 160, 162–77, 179–83, 185–88, 190, 192–95, 197–99, and 201.  
 SCRATCH3, used in chunks 59b, 63a, 64, 66–68, 73–79, 81, 82, 84c, 86–89, 91–93, 97, 100, 103, 128a, 130, 139a, 151b, 154b, 181b, 187, and 199b.  
 SECTORS\_PER\_TRACK, used in chunk 106.  
 SHIFT\_ALPHABET, used in chunks 60, 62, 64, and 65.  
 STACK\_COUNT, used in chunks 27, 35, 36, 128b, 129, 150b, and 153b.  
 TMP\_Z\_PC, used in chunk 112.  
 ZCHARS\_H, used in chunks 61 and 65.  
 ZCHARS\_L, used in chunks 61 and 65.  
 ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1, used in chunks 27, 75, 76, 82a, and 83b.  
 ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2, used in chunks 81, 84–87, 89, 92a, and 93.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR, used in chunks 37, 39, and 68b.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2, used in chunks 43 and 68b.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID, used in chunks 27, 37, 39, 43, 68b, 126a, 131, 153b, and 164.  
 ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2, used in chunks 27, 40, 43, 46, 65, and 68b.

ZDECOMPRESS\_STATE, used in chunks 61, 62, and 65.  
 Z.ABBREV\_TABLE, used in chunks 32 and 65.  
 Z.PC, used in chunks 31d, 37, 38, 40, 68b, 112, 121, 126, 130d, 149c, 153b, and 164.  
 Z.PC2\_H, used in chunks 43, 45b, 46, 65, and 68b.  
 Z.PC2\_HH, used in chunks 43, 45b, 46, 65, and 68b.  
 Z.PC2\_L, used in chunks 43, 45b, 46, 65, and 68b.  
 Z.SP, used in chunks 27, 35, 36, 128b, and 129.

206a     $\langle$ Table offsets 206a $\rangle \equiv$  (202b)

HEADER_DICT_OFFSET	EQU	\$08	
HEADER_OBJECT_TABLE_ADDR_OFFSET	EQU	\$0B	
HEADER_STATIC_MEM_BASE	EQU	\$0E	
HEADER_FLAGS2_OFFSET	EQU	\$10	
FIRST_OBJECT_OFFSET	EQU	\$35	
OBJECT_PARENT_OFFSET	EQU	\$04	
OBJECT_SIBLING_OFFSET	EQU	\$05	
OBJECT_CHILD_OFFSET	EQU	\$06	
OBJECT_PROPS_OFFSET	EQU	\$07	

Defines:

FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET, used in chunk 133a.  
 HEADER\_DICT\_OFFSET, used in chunk 90.  
 HEADER\_FLAGS2\_OFFSET, used in chunk 71.  
 HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET, used in chunks 133b and 192.  
 HEADER\_STATIC\_MEM\_BASE, used in chunk 151b.  
 OBJECT\_CHILD\_OFFSET, used in chunks 134c, 135b, 188, and 197.  
 OBJECT\_PARENT\_OFFSET, used in chunks 134a, 135c, 179b, 190, and 197.  
 OBJECT\_PROPS\_OFFSET, used in chunks 137 and 140.  
 OBJECT\_SIBLING\_OFFSET, used in chunks 135b, 136a, 196, and 197.

206b     $\langle$ variable numbers 206b $\rangle \equiv$  (202b)

VAR_CURR_ROOM	EQU	\$10
VAR_SCORE	EQU	\$11
VAR_MAX_SCORE	EQU	\$12

Defines:

VAR\_CURR\_ROOM, used in chunk 69.  
 VAR\_MAX\_SCORE, used in chunk 69.  
 VAR\_SCORE, used in chunk 69.

206c     $\langle$ Internal error string 206c $\rangle \equiv$  (207)

```
sInternalError:
    DC          "ZORK INTERNAL ERROR!"
```

Defines:

sInternalError, never used.

```

207  < routines 207 > = (202a)
      ORG      $0800

      < main 26a >

      < Instruction tables 109 >

      < Do instruction 112 >
      < Execute instruction 111 >
      < Handle 0op instructions 113b >
      < Handle 1op instructions 114a >
      < Handle 2op instructions 116a >
      < Get const byte 120a >
      < Get const word 120b >
      < Get var content in A 122 >
      < Store to var A 124 >
      < Get var content 121 >
      < Store and go to next instruction 159a >
      < Store var 123 >
      < Handle branch 161a >
      < Instruction rtrue 184a >
      < Instruction rfalse 183b >
      < Instruction print 185a >
      < Printing a string literal 68b >
      < Instruction print ret 182b >
      < Instruction nop 200a >
      < Instruction ret popped 183a >
      < Instruction pop 168b >
      < Instruction new line 184b >
      < Instruction jz 180b >
      < Instruction get sibling 196 >
      < Instruction get child 188 >
      < Instruction get parent 190 >
      < Instruction get prop len 195 >
      < Instruction inc 169c >
      < Instruction dec 170a >
      < Increment variable 160a >
      < Decrement variable 160b >
      < Instruction print addr 185b >
      < Instruction illegal opcode 158 >
      < Instruction remove obj 199a >
      < Remove object 134a >
      < Instruction print obj 186b >
      < Print object in A 137 >
      < Instruction ret 129 >
      < Instruction jump 182a >
      < Instruction print paddr 186c >
      < Print zstring and go to next instruction 159b >
      < Instruction load 165a >
      < Instruction not 175b >

```



*<Instruction jl 180a>*  
*<Instruction jg 179a>*  
*<Instruction dec chk 176b>*  
*<Instruction inc chk 177a>*  
*<Instruction jin 179b>*  
*<Instruction test 181a>*  
*<Instruction or 176a>*  
*<Instruction and 175a>*  
*<Instruction test attr 181b>*  
*<Instruction set attr 199b>*  
*<Instruction clear attr 187>*  
*<Instruction store 166b>*  
*<Instruction insert obj 197>*  
*<Instruction loadw 165b>*  
*<Instruction loadb 166a>*  
*<Instruction get prop 191>*  
*<Instruction get prop addr 194>*  
*<Instruction get next prop 189>*  
*<Instruction add 170b>*  
*<Instruction sub 174c>*  
*<Instruction mul 173>*  
*<Instruction div 171>*  
*<Instruction mod 172>*  
*<Instruction je 177b>*  
*<Instruction call 125>*  
*<Instruction storew 167>*  
*<Instruction storeb 168a>*  
*<Instruction put prop 198>*  
*<Instruction sread 73>*  
*<Skip separators 79>*  
*<Separator checks 80>*  
*<Get dictionary address 90>*  
*<Match dictionary word 91>*  
*<Instruction print char 185c>*  
*<Instruction print num 186a>*  
*<Print number 103>*  
*<Print negative number 104>*  
*<Instruction random 174a>*  
*<Instruction push 169b>*  
*<Instruction pull 169a>*  
*<mulu16 97>*  
*<divu16 100>*  
*<Check sign 96a>*  
*<Set sign 96b>*  
*<negate 95a>*  
*<Flip sign 95b>*  
*<Get attribute pointer and mask 138>*  
*<Get property pointer 140>*  
*<Get property number 141a>*  
*<Get property length 141b>*

*<Next property 142>*  
*<Get object address 132>*  
*<cmp16 101b>*  
*<cmput16 101a>*  
*<Push 35>*  
*<Pop 36>*  
*<Get next code byte 37>*  
*<Load address 45b>*  
*<Load packed address 46>*  
*<Get next code word 45a>*  
*<Get next code byte 2 43>*  
*<Set page first 42>*  
*<Find index of page table 41>*  
*<Print zstring 62>*  
*<Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 68a>*  
*<Printing a space 63b>*  
*<Printing a CRLF 67c>*  
*<Shifting alphabets 64>*  
*<Printing an abbreviation 65>*  
*<A mod 3 102>*  
*<A2 table 67a>*  
*<Get alphabet 60>*  
*<Get next zchar 61>*  
*<ASCII to Zchar 81>*  
*<Search nonalpha table 88b>*  
*<Get alphabet for char 83a>*  
*<Z compress 85>*  
*<Instruction restart 200b>*  
*<Locate last RAM page 34>*  
*<Buffer a character 57>*  
*<Dump buffer line 53>*  
*<Dump buffer to printer 51>*  
*<Dump buffer to screen 50>*  
*<Dump buffer with more 54>*  
*<Home 48>*  
*<Print status line 69>*  
*<Output string to console 47>*  
*<Read line 71>*  
*<Reset window 49>*  
*<iob struct 105>*  
*<Do RWTS on sector 106>*  
*<Reading sectors 107>*  
*<Writing sectors 108>*  
*<Do reset window 29a>*  
*<Print ASCII string 59b>*  
*<Save diskette strings 144b>*  
*<Insert save diskette 143>*  
*<Get prompted number from user 145>*  
*<Reinsert game diskette 148>*  
*<Instruction save 149a>*

*<Copy data to buff 150a>*  
*<Instruction restore 152b>*  
*<Copy data from buff 153c>*  
*<Instruction quit 201>*  
*<Internal error string 206c>*  
*<brk 31c>*  
*<Get random 174b>*

HEX	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
HEX	00 FC 19 00 00

## Chapter 16

# Defined Chunks

*⟨A mod 3 102⟩* [207](#), [102](#)  
*⟨A2 table 67a⟩* [207](#), [67a](#)  
*⟨ASCII to Zchar 81⟩* [207](#), [81](#), [82a](#), [82b](#), [83b](#), [84a](#), [84b](#), [84c](#), [86](#), [87a](#), [87b](#), [87c](#),  
[88a](#), [89](#)  
*⟨Apple ROM defines 203⟩* [202b](#), [203](#)  
*⟨BOOT1 20a⟩* [20a](#), [22d](#), [24](#)  
*⟨BOOT1 parameters 20b⟩* [20a](#), [20b](#)  
*⟨BOOT1 sector translation table 22b⟩* [20a](#), [22b](#)  
*⟨Buffer a character 57⟩* [207](#), [57](#), [58a](#), [58b](#), [59a](#)  
*⟨Check sign 96a⟩* [207](#), [96a](#)  
*⟨Copy data from buff 153c⟩* [207](#), [153c](#)  
*⟨Copy data to buff 150a⟩* [207](#), [150a](#)  
*⟨Decrement variable 160b⟩* [207](#), [160b](#)  
*⟨Detach object 135c⟩* [134a](#), [135c](#)  
*⟨Do RWTS on sector 106⟩* [207](#), [106](#)  
*⟨Do instruction 112⟩* [207](#), [112](#), [113a](#)  
*⟨Do reset window 29a⟩* [207](#), [29a](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer line 53⟩* [207](#), [53](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer to printer 51⟩* [207](#), [51](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer to screen 50⟩* [207](#), [50](#)  
*⟨Dump buffer with more 54⟩* [207](#), [54](#), [55a](#), [55b](#), [56](#)  
*⟨Execute instruction 111⟩* [207](#), [111](#)  
*⟨Find index of page table 41⟩* [207](#), [41](#)  
*⟨Flip sign 95b⟩* [207](#), [95b](#)  
*⟨Get alphabet 60⟩* [207](#), [60](#)  
*⟨Get alphabet for char 83a⟩* [207](#), [83a](#)  
*⟨Get attribute pointer and mask 138⟩* [207](#), [138](#), [139a](#), [139b](#)  
*⟨Get const byte 120a⟩* [207](#), [120a](#)

⟨Get const word 120b⟩ 207, [120b](#)  
 ⟨Get dictionary address 90⟩ 207, [90](#)  
 ⟨Get next code byte 37⟩ 207, [37](#), [38](#), [39](#), [40](#)  
 ⟨Get next code byte 2 43⟩ 207, [43](#)  
 ⟨Get next code word 45a⟩ 207, [45a](#)  
 ⟨Get next zchar 61⟩ 207, [61](#)  
 ⟨Get object address 132⟩ 207, [132](#), [133a](#), [133b](#)  
 ⟨Get prompted number from user 145⟩ 207, [145](#)  
 ⟨Get property length 141b⟩ 207, [141b](#)  
 ⟨Get property number 141a⟩ 207, [141a](#)  
 ⟨Get property pointer 140⟩ 207, [140](#)  
 ⟨Get random 174b⟩ 207, [174b](#)  
 ⟨Get var content 121⟩ 207, [121](#)  
 ⟨Get var content in A 122⟩ 207, [122](#)  
 ⟨Handle 0op instructions 113b⟩ 207, [113b](#)  
 ⟨Handle 1op instructions 114a⟩ 207, [114a](#), [114b](#), [114c](#), [114d](#), [115a](#), [115b](#)  
 ⟨Handle 2op instructions 116a⟩ 207, [116a](#), [116b](#), [117a](#), [117b](#), [117c](#)  
 ⟨Handle branch 161a⟩ 207, [161a](#), [161b](#), [162](#), [163a](#), [163b](#), [163c](#), [164](#)  
 ⟨Handle varop instructions 118⟩ 112, [118](#), [119](#)  
 ⟨Home 48⟩ 207, [48](#)  
 ⟨Increment variable 160a⟩ 207, [160a](#)  
 ⟨Initialize BOOT1 21b⟩ 20c, [21b](#), [21c](#)  
 ⟨Insert save diskette 143⟩ 207, [143](#), [144a](#), [146a](#), [146b](#), [147a](#), [147b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction add 170b⟩ 207, [170b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction and 175a⟩ 207, [175a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction call 125⟩ 207, [125](#), [126a](#), [126b](#), [126c](#), [127](#), [128a](#), [128b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction clear attr 187⟩ 207, [187](#)  
 ⟨Instruction dec 170a⟩ 207, [170a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction dec chk 176b⟩ 207, [176b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction div 171⟩ 207, [171](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get child 188⟩ 207, [188](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get next prop 189⟩ 207, [189](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get parent 190⟩ 207, [190](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get prop 191⟩ 207, [191](#), [192](#), [193](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get prop addr 194⟩ 207, [194](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get prop len 195⟩ 207, [195](#)  
 ⟨Instruction get sibling 196⟩ 207, [196](#)  
 ⟨Instruction illegal opcode 158⟩ 207, [158](#)  
 ⟨Instruction inc 169c⟩ 207, [169c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction inc chk 177a⟩ 207, [177a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction insert obj 197⟩ 207, [197](#)  
 ⟨Instruction je 177b⟩ 207, [177b](#), [178a](#), [178b](#), [178c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jg 179a⟩ 207, [179a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jin 179b⟩ 207, [179b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jl 180a⟩ 207, [180a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction jump 182a⟩ 207, [182a](#)

⟨Instruction jz 180b⟩ 207, [180b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction load 165a⟩ 207, [165a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction loadb 166a⟩ 207, [166a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction loadw 165b⟩ 207, [165b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction mod 172⟩ 207, [172](#)  
 ⟨Instruction mul 173⟩ 207, [173](#)  
 ⟨Instruction new line 184b⟩ 207, [184b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction nop 200a⟩ 207, [200a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction not 175b⟩ 207, [175b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction or 176a⟩ 207, [176a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction pop 168b⟩ 207, [168b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print 185a⟩ 207, [185a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print addr 185b⟩ 207, [185b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print char 185c⟩ 207, [185c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print num 186a⟩ 207, [186a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print obj 186b⟩ 207, [186b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print paddr 186c⟩ 207, [186c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction print ret 182b⟩ 207, [182b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction pull 169a⟩ 207, [169a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction push 169b⟩ 207, [169b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction put prop 198⟩ 207, [198](#)  
 ⟨Instruction quit 201⟩ 207, [201](#)  
 ⟨Instruction random 174a⟩ 207, [174a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction remove obj 199a⟩ 207, [199a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction restart 200b⟩ 207, [200b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction restore 152b⟩ 207, [152b](#), [152c](#), [153a](#), [153b](#), [154a](#), [154b](#), [154c](#), [155a](#),  
[155b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction ret 129⟩ 207, [129](#), [130a](#), [130b](#), [130c](#), [130d](#), [131](#)  
 ⟨Instruction ret popped 183a⟩ 207, [183a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction rfalse 183b⟩ 207, [183b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction rtrue 184a⟩ 207, [184a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction save 149a⟩ 207, [149a](#), [149b](#), [149c](#), [150b](#), [151a](#), [151b](#), [151c](#), [152a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction set attr 199b⟩ 207, [199b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction sread 73⟩ 207, [73](#), [74a](#), [74b](#), [74c](#), [75a](#), [75b](#), [76a](#), [76b](#), [77](#), [78](#)  
 ⟨Instruction store 166b⟩ 207, [166b](#)  
 ⟨Instruction storeb 168a⟩ 207, [168a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction storew 167⟩ 207, [167](#)  
 ⟨Instruction sub 174c⟩ 207, [174c](#)  
 ⟨Instruction tables 109⟩ 207, [109](#)  
 ⟨Instruction test 181a⟩ 207, [181a](#)  
 ⟨Instruction test attr 181b⟩ 207, [181b](#)  
 ⟨Internal error string 206c⟩ 207, [206c](#)  
 ⟨Jump to BOOT2 25⟩ 20a, [25](#)  
 ⟨Load address 45b⟩ 207, [45b](#)  
 ⟨Load packed address 46⟩ 207, [46](#)  
 ⟨Locate last RAM page 34⟩ 207, [34](#)

<Macros 10> 202a, [10](#), [11a](#), [11b](#), [12a](#), [12b](#), [12c](#), [13a](#), [13b](#), [14a](#), [14b](#), [15a](#), [15b](#),  
[15c](#), [16a](#), [16b](#), [17a](#), [17b](#), [17c](#), [18](#)  
 <Match dictionary word 91> 207, [91](#), [92a](#), [92b](#), [93](#), [94a](#), [94b](#)  
 <Next property 142> 207, [142](#)  
 <Output string to console 47> 207, [47](#)  
 <Pop 36> 207, [36](#)  
 <Print ASCII string 59b> 207, [59b](#)  
 <Print negative number 104> 207, [104](#)  
 <Print number 103> 207, [103](#)  
 <Print object in A 137> 207, [137](#)  
 <Print status line 69> 207, [69](#)  
 <Print the zchar 66a> 62, [66a](#), [66b](#), [67b](#)  
 <Print zstring 62> 207, [62](#), [63a](#)  
 <Print zstring and go to next instruction 159b> 207, [159b](#)  
 <Printing a 10-bit ZSCII character 68a> 207, [68a](#)  
 <Printing a CRLF 67c> 207, [67c](#)  
 <Printing a space 63b> 207, [63b](#)  
 <Printing a string literal 68b> 207, [68b](#)  
 <Printing an abbreviation 65> 207, [65](#)  
 <Program defines 204> 202b, [204](#)  
 <Push 35> 207, [35](#)  
 <Read BOOT2 from disk 20c> 20a, [20c](#), [23](#)  
 <Read line 71> 207, [71](#)  
 <Reading sectors 107> 207, [107](#)  
 <Reinsert game diskette 148> 207, [148](#)  
 <Remove object 134a> 207, [134a](#), [134b](#), [134c](#), [135a](#), [135b](#), [136a](#), [136b](#)  
 <Reset window 49> 207, [49](#)  
 <Save diskette strings 144b> 207, [144b](#)  
 <Search nonalpha table 88b> 207, [88b](#)  
 <Separator checks 80> 207, [80](#)  
 <Set page first 42> 207, [42](#)  
 <Set sign 96b> 207, [96b](#)  
 <Set up parameters for reading a sector 22a> 20c, [22a](#), [22c](#), [22e](#)  
 <Shifting alphabets 64> 207, [64](#)  
 <Skip initialization if BOOT1 already initialized 21a> 20c, [21a](#)  
 <Skip separators 79> 207, [79](#)  
 <Store and go to next instruction 159a> 207, [159a](#)  
 <Store to var A 124> 207, [124](#)  
 <Store var 123> 207, [123](#)  
 <Table offsets 206a> 202b, [206a](#)  
 <Writing sectors 108> 207, [108](#)  
 <Z compress 85> 207, [85](#)  
 <brk 31c> 207, [31c](#)  
 <cmp16 101b> 207, [101b](#)  
 <cmpu16 101a> 207, [101a](#)  
 <defines 202b> 202a, [202b](#)

*<die 31b>* [26a](#), [31b](#)  
*<divu16 100>* [207](#), [100](#)  
*<iob struct 105>* [207](#), [105](#)  
*<main 26a>* [207](#), [26a](#), [26b](#), [27](#), [28a](#), [28b](#), [28c](#), [29b](#), [30](#), [31a](#), [31d](#), [32](#), [33a](#), [33b](#)  
*<main.asm 202a>* [202a](#)  
*<mulu16 97>* [207](#), [97](#)  
*<negate 95a>* [207](#), [95a](#)  
*<routines 207>* [202a](#), [207](#)  
*<trace of divu16 99>* [99](#)  
*<variable numbers 206b>* [202b](#), [206b](#)



# Chapter 17

## Index

.abbreviation: [65](#)  
.check\_for\_alphabet\_A1: [66b](#)  
.check\_for\_good\_2op: [117b](#)  
.crlf: [67c](#)  
.map\_ascii\_for\_A2: [67b](#)  
.not\_found\_in\_page\_table: [40](#)  
.opcode\_table\_jump: [111](#)  
.set\_page\_addr: [39](#)  
.shift\_alphabet: [64](#)  
.shift\_lock\_alphabet: [64](#)  
.space: [63b](#)  
.z10bits: [68a](#)  
.zcode\_page\_invalid: [38](#)  
ADDA: [14a](#), [91](#), [130b](#)  
ADDAC: [14b](#), [194](#)  
ADDB: [15a](#), [145](#), [147b](#)  
ADDB2: [15b](#), [92a](#), [92b](#), [93](#)  
ADDW: [15c](#), [73](#), [90](#), [140](#), [165b](#), [166a](#), [167](#), [168a](#), [170b](#)  
ADDWC: [15c](#), [16a](#), [97](#)  
AFTER\_Z\_IMAGE\_ADDR: [33a](#), [40](#), [43](#), [204](#)  
A\_mod\_3: [64](#), [84a](#), [86](#), [102](#)  
BOOT1: [20a](#), [24](#)  
BOOT1\_SECTOR\_NUM: [20b](#), [21c](#), [22a](#), [22e](#), [24](#)  
BOOT1\_SECTOR\_TRANSLATE\_TABLE: [22b](#), [22c](#), [24](#)  
BOOT1\_WRITE\_ADDR: [20b](#), [21c](#), [22e](#), [23](#), [24](#)  
BUFF\_AREA: [50](#), [51](#), [57](#), [58a](#), [59a](#), [71](#), [107](#), [108](#), [149b](#), [150a](#), [152c](#), [153c](#), [204](#)  
BUFF\_END: [50](#), [51](#), [55a](#), [57](#), [58b](#), [59a](#), [71](#), [204](#)  
BUFF\_LINE\_LEN: [58b](#), [59a](#), [204](#)  
CH: [54](#), [69](#), [145](#), [203](#)

CLREOL: [54](#), [69](#), [145](#), [203](#)  
COUT: [51](#), [55b](#), [203](#)  
COUT1: [47](#), [50](#), [55a](#), [203](#)  
CSW: [51](#), [55b](#), [203](#)  
CURR\_DISK\_BUFF\_ADDR: [204](#)  
CURR\_LINE: [48](#), [54](#), [71](#), [204](#)  
CURR\_OPCODE: [112](#), [115a](#), [116b](#), [117b](#), [119](#), [204](#)  
CV: [69](#), [203](#)  
DEBUG\_JUMP: [111](#), [204](#)  
FIRST\_OBJECT\_OFFSET: [133a](#), [206a](#)  
FIRST\_Z\_PAGE: [28b](#), [33b](#), [41](#), [42](#), [204](#)  
FRAME\_STACK\_COUNT: [126a](#), [128b](#), [129](#), [130d](#), [204](#)  
FRAME\_Z\_SP: [126a](#), [128b](#), [129](#), [130d](#), [204](#)  
GETLN1: [71](#), [203](#)  
GLOBAL\_ZVARS\_ADDR: [32](#), [121](#), [123](#), [204](#)  
HEADER\_DICT\_OFFSET: [90](#), [206a](#)  
HEADER\_FLAGS2\_OFFSET: [71](#), [206a](#)  
HEADER\_OBJECT\_TABLE\_ADDR\_OFFSET: [133b](#), [192](#), [206a](#)  
HEADER\_STATIC\_MEM\_BASE: [151b](#), [206a](#)  
HOME: [48](#), [203](#)  
INCW: [13b](#), [36](#), [107](#), [108](#), [137](#), [138](#), [160a](#), [174a](#), [194](#)  
INIT: [23](#), [24](#), [203](#)  
INVFLG: [49](#), [54](#), [69](#), [145](#), [203](#)  
IWMDATAPTR: [21a](#), [22e](#), [24](#), [203](#)  
IWMSECTOR: [22c](#), [24](#), [203](#)  
IWMSLTNDX: [21b](#), [22e](#), [23](#), [24](#), [203](#)  
LAST\_Z\_PAGE: [28b](#), [33b](#), [41](#), [42](#), [204](#)  
LOCAL\_ZVARS: [121](#), [123](#), [127](#), [128a](#), [130b](#), [150b](#), [153b](#), [204](#)  
LOCKED\_ALPHABET: [60](#), [62](#), [64](#), [65](#), [81](#), [82b](#), [84a](#), [86](#), [204](#)  
MOVB: [11b](#), [34](#), [84a](#), [126a](#), [128b](#), [129](#), [130b](#), [130d](#), [181a](#)  
MOVW: [12a](#), [29b](#), [97](#), [100](#), [112](#), [114d](#), [116a](#), [116b](#), [126a](#), [128b](#), [129](#), [130d](#), [131](#),  
[137](#), [151b](#), [154b](#), [166b](#), [169b](#), [171](#), [172](#), [173](#), [174a](#), [174b](#), [176b](#), [177a](#), [179a](#),  
[180a](#), [182a](#), [183a](#), [185b](#), [186a](#), [186c](#), [193](#)  
NEXT\_PAGE\_TABLE: [27](#), [28a](#), [33b](#), [42](#), [204](#)  
NUM\_IMAGE\_PAGES: [30](#), [33a](#), [38](#), [43](#), [204](#)  
OBJECT\_CHILD\_OFFSET: [134c](#), [135b](#), [188](#), [197](#), [206a](#)  
OBJECT\_PARENT\_OFFSET: [134a](#), [135c](#), [179b](#), [190](#), [197](#), [206a](#)  
OBJECT\_PROPS\_OFFSET: [137](#), [140](#), [206a](#)  
OBJECT\_SIBLING\_OFFSET: [135b](#), [136a](#), [196](#), [197](#), [206a](#)  
OPERANDO: [71](#), [73](#), [75b](#), [76a](#), [79](#), [114d](#), [116a](#), [118](#), [125](#), [126b](#), [128a](#), [131](#), [134a](#),  
[135a](#), [136a](#), [138](#), [140](#), [160a](#), [160b](#), [165a](#), [165b](#), [166a](#), [166b](#), [167](#), [168a](#), [169a](#),  
[169b](#), [170b](#), [171](#), [172](#), [173](#), [174a](#), [174c](#), [175a](#), [175b](#), [176a](#), [178a](#), [178b](#), [178c](#),  
[179a](#), [179b](#), [180a](#), [180b](#), [181a](#), [182a](#), [183a](#), [184a](#), [185b](#), [185c](#), [186a](#), [186b](#), [186c](#),  
[188](#), [190](#), [195](#), [196](#), [197](#), [204](#)  
OPERAND1: [73](#), [74a](#), [75b](#), [77](#), [78](#), [116b](#), [138](#), [165b](#), [166a](#), [166b](#), [167](#), [168a](#), [170b](#),  
[171](#), [172](#), [173](#), [174c](#), [175a](#), [176a](#), [176b](#), [177a](#), [178a](#), [179a](#), [179b](#), [180a](#), [181a](#),

189, 191, 192, 194, 197, 198, 204  
OPERAND2: 167, 168a, 198, 204  
OPERAND3: 204  
OPERAND\_COUNT: 112, 114d, 117a, 118, 128a, 177b, 204  
PAGE\_H\_TABLE: 27, 28a, 40, 41, 43, 204  
PAGE\_L\_TABLE: 27, 28a, 40, 41, 43, 204  
PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX: 38, 40, 43, 204  
PAGE\_TABLE\_INDEX2: 40, 43, 204  
PREV\_PAGE\_TABLE: 27, 28a, 42, 204  
PRINTER\_CSW: 27, 51, 55b, 204  
PROMPT: 49, 203  
PSHW: 12b, 97, 100, 160a, 197  
PULB: 12c, 128b  
PULW: 13a, 97, 100, 160a, 197  
RDKEY: 54, 145, 147a, 148, 203  
RDSECT\_PTR: 20c, 21b, 24, 203  
ROLW: 17c, 100  
RORW: 18, 97  
RWTS: 106, 204  
SCRATCH1: 29b, 30, 40, 43, 78, 81, 82b, 83b, 84a, 84b, 84c, 86, 87a, 87b, 89, 91, 92a, 92b, 93, 94a, 94b, 96a, 97, 100, 101a, 101b, 103, 106, 107, 108, 111, 121, 123, 128a, 130b, 130c, 135b, 136b, 137, 138, 139a, 139b, 140, 147b, 163c, 164, 171, 172, 173, 174a, 176b, 177a, 179a, 180a, 181a, 181b, 187, 192, 193, 199b, 204  
SCRATCH2: 29b, 30, 34, 35, 36, 38, 40, 41, 42, 43, 45a, 45b, 46, 47, 54, 59b, 61, 65, 69, 80, 81, 82a, 83b, 90, 91, 92a, 92b, 93, 94b, 95a, 96a, 97, 100, 101a, 101b, 103, 106, 107, 108, 111, 113b, 114d, 115b, 116a, 116b, 117c, 118, 119, 120a, 120b, 121, 123, 124, 125, 126a, 127, 128a, 128b, 130a, 130b, 130c, 130d, 131, 132, 133a, 133b, 134a, 134b, 134c, 135b, 135c, 136a, 136b, 137, 138, 139b, 140, 141a, 141b, 143, 145, 147a, 148, 149c, 150a, 150b, 151a, 151b, 153b, 153c, 154a, 154b, 159a, 160a, 160b, 162, 163a, 163b, 163c, 164, 165b, 166a, 166b, 167, 168a, 169b, 170b, 171, 172, 173, 174a, 174b, 174c, 175a, 175b, 176a, 177a, 179a, 179b, 180a, 181a, 182a, 183a, 185b, 186a, 186c, 187, 188, 190, 192, 193, 194, 195, 197, 198, 199b, 201, 204  
SCRATCH3: 59b, 63a, 64, 66a, 67b, 68a, 73, 74b, 74c, 75a, 75b, 76a, 76b, 77, 78, 79, 81, 82a, 82b, 84c, 86, 87a, 87b, 87c, 88a, 89, 91, 92a, 92b, 93, 97, 100, 103, 128a, 130b, 130c, 139a, 151b, 154b, 181b, 187, 199b, 204  
SECTORS\_PER\_TRACK: 106, 204  
SEPARATORS\_TABLE: 80  
SETKBD: 23, 24, 203  
SETVID: 23, 24, 203  
SHIFT\_ALPHABET: 60, 62, 64, 65, 204  
STACK\_COUNT: 27, 35, 36, 128b, 129, 150b, 153b, 204  
STOB: 11b, 27, 28b, 62, 103, 112, 114d, 117a, 126a, 128a, 131  
STOW: 10, 27, 28b, 29b, 54, 97, 100, 103, 107, 108, 113b, 115b, 117c, 119, 125, 130b, 139a, 143, 145, 147a, 148, 149c, 150b, 151a, 153b, 154a, 201

STOW2: [11a](#), [108](#)  
SUBB: [16b](#), [35](#), [93](#), [130c](#), [160b](#), [163b](#), [182a](#)  
SUBB2: [17a](#), [92b](#)  
SUBW: [17b](#), [94b](#), [95a](#), [174c](#), [194](#)  
TMP\_Z\_PC: [112](#), [204](#)  
VAR\_CURR\_ROOM: [69](#), [206b](#)  
VAR\_MAX\_SCORE: [69](#), [206b](#)  
VAR\_SCORE: [69](#), [206b](#)  
VTAB: [69](#), [203](#)  
WNETBTM: [49](#), [54](#), [203](#)  
WNETLFT: [49](#), [203](#)  
WNETTOP: [48](#), [49](#), [54](#), [71](#), [203](#)  
WNETWDTH: [49](#), [55a](#), [57](#), [58a](#), [59a](#), [203](#)  
ZCHARS\_H: [61](#), [65](#), [204](#)  
ZCHARS\_L: [61](#), [65](#), [204](#)  
ZCHAR\_SCRATCH1: [27](#), [75a](#), [76a](#), [76b](#), [82a](#), [83b](#), [204](#)  
ZCHAR\_SCRATCH2: [81](#), [84b](#), [85](#), [86](#), [87b](#), [89](#), [92a](#), [93](#), [204](#)  
ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR: [37](#), [39](#), [68b](#), [204](#)  
ZCODE\_PAGE\_ADDR2: [43](#), [68b](#), [204](#)  
ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID: [27](#), [37](#), [39](#), [43](#), [68b](#), [126a](#), [131](#), [153b](#), [164](#), [204](#)  
ZCODE\_PAGE\_VALID2: [27](#), [40](#), [43](#), [46](#), [65](#), [68b](#), [204](#)  
ZDECOMPRESS\_STATE: [61](#), [62](#), [65](#), [204](#)  
Z\_ABBREV\_TABLE: [32](#), [65](#), [204](#)  
Z\_PC: [31d](#), [37](#), [38](#), [40](#), [68b](#), [112](#), [121](#), [126a](#), [126b](#), [130d](#), [149c](#), [153b](#), [164](#), [204](#)  
Z\_PC2\_H: [43](#), [45b](#), [46](#), [65](#), [68b](#), [204](#)  
Z\_PC2\_HH: [43](#), [45b](#), [46](#), [65](#), [68b](#), [204](#)  
Z\_PC2\_L: [43](#), [45b](#), [46](#), [65](#), [68b](#), [204](#)  
Z\_SP: [27](#), [35](#), [36](#), [128b](#), [129](#), [204](#)  
a2\_table: [67a](#), [67b](#), [88b](#)  
ascii\_to\_zchar: [78](#), [81](#)  
attr\_ptr\_and\_mask: [138](#), [181b](#), [187](#), [199b](#)  
branch: [151c](#), [155a](#), [161a](#), [177a](#), [178a](#), [178b](#), [178c](#), [180b](#)  
branch\_to\_offset: [163b](#), [182a](#)  
brk: [31a](#), [31b](#), [31c](#), [33a](#), [35](#), [36](#), [158](#), [177b](#), [193](#), [198](#)  
buffer\_char: [57](#), [59b](#), [66a](#), [67c](#), [69](#), [103](#), [104](#), [144a](#), [146a](#), [146b](#), [182b](#), [184b](#),  
[185c](#)  
buffer\_char\_set\_buffer\_end: [56](#), [57](#)  
check\_sign: [96a](#), [171](#), [172](#), [173](#)  
cmp16: [101b](#), [177a](#), [179a](#), [180a](#)  
cmpu16: [101a](#), [101b](#), [181a](#)  
copy\_data\_from\_buff: [153b](#), [153c](#), [154a](#)  
copy\_data\_to\_buff: [149c](#), [150a](#), [150b](#), [151a](#)  
cout\_string: [47](#), [54](#), [69](#), [145](#)  
dct: [105](#), [108](#)  
dec\_var: [160b](#), [170a](#), [176b](#)  
divu16: [100](#), [103](#), [171](#), [172](#), [174a](#)

do\_chk: [176b](#), [177a](#)  
do\_instruction: [33b](#), [74a](#), [74b](#), [112](#), [128b](#), [159a](#), [159b](#), [161b](#), [164](#), [166b](#), [167](#),  
[168a](#), [168b](#), [169b](#), [169c](#), [170a](#), [184b](#), [185a](#), [185c](#), [186a](#), [186b](#), [187](#), [197](#), [198](#),  
[199a](#), [199b](#), [200a](#)  
do\_reset\_window: [28c](#), [29a](#)  
do\_rwts\_on\_sector: [106](#), [107](#), [108](#)  
dump\_buffer\_line: [53](#), [55a](#), [69](#), [71](#), [145](#), [147a](#), [148](#)  
dump\_buffer\_to\_printer: [51](#), [53](#), [71](#)  
dump\_buffer\_to\_screen: [50](#), [53](#), [69](#)  
dump\_buffer\_with\_more: [54](#), [57](#), [58b](#), [143](#), [145](#), [147a](#), [147b](#), [148](#), [200b](#), [201](#)  
find\_index\_of\_page\_table: [38](#), [41](#), [43](#)  
flip\_sign: [95b](#), [96a](#)  
get\_alphabet: [60](#), [63a](#), [64](#)  
get\_alphabet\_for\_char: [82b](#), [83a](#), [83b](#), [87a](#)  
get\_const\_byte: [114b](#), [116a](#), [116b](#), [118](#), [120a](#)  
get\_const\_word: [114a](#), [118](#), [120b](#)  
get\_dictionary\_addr: [80](#), [90](#), [91](#)  
get\_next\_code\_byte: [37](#), [39](#), [112](#), [113a](#), [120a](#), [120b](#), [121](#), [123](#), [126c](#), [127](#), [161a](#),  
[161b](#), [162](#)  
get\_next\_code\_byte2: [43](#), [45a](#), [166a](#)  
get\_next\_code\_word: [45a](#), [61](#), [165b](#)  
get\_next\_zchar: [61](#), [63a](#), [65](#), [68a](#)  
get\_nonstack\_var: [121](#), [122](#)  
get\_object\_addr: [132](#), [134a](#), [134c](#), [136a](#), [137](#), [138](#), [140](#), [179b](#), [188](#), [190](#), [196](#),  
[197](#)  
get\_property\_len: [141b](#), [142](#), [193](#), [195](#), [198](#)  
get\_property\_num: [141a](#), [189](#), [191](#), [194](#), [198](#)  
get\_property\_ptr: [140](#), [189](#), [191](#), [194](#), [198](#)  
get\_random: [174a](#), [174b](#)  
get\_top\_of\_stack: [121](#)  
get\_var\_content: [114c](#), [116a](#), [116b](#), [118](#), [121](#)  
home: [48](#), [49](#), [143](#)  
illegal\_opcode: [109](#), [113b](#), [115a](#), [117b](#), [119](#), [158](#)  
inc\_sector\_and\_read: [107](#), [154b](#)  
inc\_sector\_and\_write: [108](#), [151b](#)  
inc\_var: [160a](#), [169c](#), [177a](#)  
instr\_add: [109](#), [170b](#)  
instr\_and: [109](#), [175a](#)  
instr\_call: [109](#), [125](#)  
instr\_clear\_attr: [109](#), [187](#)  
instr\_dec: [109](#), [170a](#)  
instr\_dec\_chk: [109](#), [176b](#)  
instr\_div: [109](#), [171](#)  
instr\_get\_next\_prop: [109](#), [189](#)  
instr\_get\_parent: [109](#), [190](#)  
instr\_get\_prop: [109](#), [191](#)

`instr_get_prop_addr:` [109](#), [194](#)  
`instr_get_prop_len:` [109](#), [195](#)  
`instr_get_sibling:` [109](#), [196](#)  
`instr_inc:` [109](#), [169c](#)  
`instr_inc_chk:` [109](#), [177a](#)  
`instr_insert_obj:` [109](#), [197](#)  
`instr_je:` [109](#), [177b](#)  
`instr_jg:` [109](#), [179a](#)  
`instr_jin:` [109](#), [179b](#)  
`instr_jl:` [109](#), [180a](#)  
`instr_jump:` [109](#), [182a](#)  
`instr_jz:` [109](#), [180b](#)  
`instr_load:` [109](#), [165a](#)  
`instr_loadb:` [109](#), [166a](#)  
`instr_loadw:` [109](#), [165b](#)  
`instr_mod:` [109](#), [172](#)  
`instr_mul:` [109](#), [173](#)  
`instr_new_line:` [109](#), [184b](#)  
`instr_nop:` [109](#), [200a](#)  
`instr_not:` [109](#), [175b](#)  
`instr_or:` [109](#), [176a](#)  
`instr_pop:` [109](#), [168b](#)  
`instr_print:` [109](#), [185a](#)  
`instr_print_addr:` [109](#), [185b](#)  
`instr_print_char:` [109](#), [185c](#)  
`instr_print_num:` [109](#), [186a](#)  
`instr_print_obj:` [109](#), [186b](#)  
`instr_print_paddr:` [109](#), [186c](#)  
`instr_print_ret:` [109](#), [182b](#)  
`instr_pull:` [109](#), [169a](#)  
`instr_push:` [109](#), [169b](#)  
`instr_put_prop:` [109](#), [198](#)  
`instr_quit:` [109](#), [201](#)  
`instr_random:` [109](#), [174a](#)  
`instr_remove_obj:` [109](#), [199a](#)  
`instr_restart:` [109](#), [200b](#)  
`instr_restore:` [109](#), [152b](#)  
`instr_ret:` [109](#), [129](#), [183a](#), [184a](#)  
`instr_ret_popped:` [109](#), [183a](#)  
`instr_rfalse:` [109](#), [163a](#), [183b](#)  
`instr_rtrue:` [109](#), [163a](#), [182b](#), [184a](#)  
`instr_save:` [109](#), [149a](#)  
`instr_set_attr:` [109](#), [199b](#)  
`instr_sread:` [73](#), [109](#)  
`instr_store:` [109](#), [166b](#)  
`instr_storeb:` [109](#), [168a](#)

instr\_storew: [109](#), [167](#)  
instr\_sub: [109](#), [174c](#)  
instr\_test: [109](#), [181a](#)  
instr\_test.attr: [109](#), [181b](#)  
invalidate\_zcode\_page2: [46](#)  
iob: [105](#), [106](#), [146a](#), [146b](#), [148](#)  
iob.buffer: [105](#)  
iob.command: [105](#)  
iob.drive: [105](#)  
iob.sector: [105](#)  
iob.slot\_times\_16: [105](#)  
iob.track: [105](#)  
is\_dict\_separator: [75b](#), [76b](#), [80](#)  
is\_separator: [76a](#), [79](#), [80](#)  
is\_std\_separator: [75b](#), [80](#)  
load.address: [45b](#), [137](#), [165b](#), [166a](#), [185b](#)  
load.packed.address: [46](#), [65](#), [186c](#)  
locate\_last\_ram\_addr: [34](#)  
main: [26a](#), [29b](#), [30](#), [40](#), [43](#), [200b](#)  
match\_dictionary\_word: [78](#), [91](#)  
mulu16: [97](#), [173](#)  
negate: [95a](#), [95b](#), [96b](#), [104](#)  
negated\_branch: [152a](#), [155b](#), [161a](#), [177a](#), [178c](#), [179a](#), [179b](#), [180a](#), [180b](#), [181a](#),  
[181b](#), [188](#)  
next.property: [142](#), [189](#), [191](#), [194](#), [198](#)  
please\_insert\_save\_diskette: [143](#), [149a](#), [152b](#)  
please\_reinsert\_game\_diskette: [148](#), [151c](#), [152a](#), [155a](#), [155b](#)  
pop: [36](#), [121](#), [124](#), [130a](#), [130c](#), [130d](#), [168b](#), [169a](#), [183a](#)  
pop.push: [122](#), [124](#)  
print\_ascii\_string: [59b](#), [143](#), [145](#), [147a](#), [148](#), [201](#)  
print\_negative\_num: [103](#), [104](#)  
print\_number: [69](#), [103](#), [186a](#)  
print\_obj\_in\_A: [69](#), [137](#), [186b](#)  
print\_status\_line: [69](#), [73](#)  
print\_zstring: [62](#), [65](#), [68b](#), [137](#), [159b](#)  
print\_zstring\_and\_next: [159b](#), [185b](#), [186c](#)  
printer\_card\_initialized\_flag: [51](#)  
prompt\_offset: [144a](#), [144b](#), [145](#), [146a](#), [146b](#)  
push: [35](#), [123](#), [124](#), [126a](#), [127](#), [128b](#), [169b](#)  
push.and.check.obj: [188](#), [196](#)  
read\_from\_sector: [29b](#), [30](#), [40](#), [43](#), [107](#)  
read\_line: [71](#), [73](#)  
read\_next\_sector: [107](#), [152c](#), [154a](#)  
remove\_obj: [134a](#), [197](#), [199a](#)  
reset\_window: [29a](#), [49](#)  
ret\_a: [183b](#), [184a](#)

routines\_table\_0op: [109](#), [113b](#)  
routines\_table\_1op: [109](#), [115b](#)  
routines\_table\_2op: [109](#), [117c](#)  
routines\_table\_var: [109](#), [119](#)  
sDrivePrompt: [144b](#), [146b](#)  
sInternalError: [206c](#)  
sPleaseInsert: [143](#), [144b](#)  
sPositionPrompt: [144a](#), [144b](#)  
sPressReturnToContinue: [148](#)  
sReinsertGameDiskette: [148](#)  
sReturnToBegin: [144b](#), [147a](#)  
sScore: [69](#)  
sSlotPrompt: [144a](#), [144b](#), [145](#), [146a](#), [146b](#)  
save\_drive: [144b](#), [146b](#)  
save\_position: [144a](#), [144b](#), [147b](#)  
save\_slot: [144b](#), [145](#), [146a](#)  
search\_nonalpha\_table: [88a](#), [88b](#)  
separator\_found: [80](#)  
separator\_not\_found: [80](#)  
set\_page\_first: [38](#), [40](#), [42](#), [43](#)  
set\_sign: [96b](#), [173](#)  
skip\_separators: [74c](#), [79](#)  
store\_A\_and\_next: [159a](#), [189](#), [195](#)  
store\_and\_next: [125](#), [131](#), [159a](#), [165a](#), [165b](#), [166a](#), [170b](#), [172](#), [173](#), [174a](#), [174c](#),  
[175a](#), [175b](#), [176a](#), [190](#), [192](#), [193](#), [194](#)  
store\_var: [123](#), [159a](#), [188](#)  
store\_zero\_and\_next: [159a](#), [189](#), [194](#)  
stretch\_to\_branch: [177a](#), [179a](#), [179b](#), [180a](#), [181a](#), [181b](#)  
stretch\_var\_put: [166b](#), [169a](#)  
stretchy\_z\_compress: [86](#)  
take\_branch: [180b](#), [188](#)  
var\_get: [69](#), [122](#), [160a](#), [160b](#), [165a](#)  
var\_put: [124](#), [160a](#), [166b](#)  
write\_next\_sector: [108](#), [150b](#), [151a](#)  
z\_compress: [84c](#), [85](#), [86](#), [87b](#), [89](#)